









Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2022 with funding from  
University of Toronto

<https://archive.org/details/31761114691959>





CA1

Z 1

-74M21

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC  
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT  
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON  
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE  
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND  
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,  
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE  
ABOVE PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 10, 1975

---

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

---

VOLUME XXVII

CANADIAN ARCTIC  
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 14 1975

LIBRARY







APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.  
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,  
Mr. Alick Ryder and  
Mr. Ian Roland for Mackenzie Valley  
Pipeline Inquiry;

Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.  
Mr. Jack Marshall,  
Mr. Darryl Carter and  
Mr. John Steeves for Canadian Arctic Gas  
Pipeline Limited;

Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.  
Mr. Alan Hollingworth for Foothills Pipelines  
Ltd.;

Mr. Russell Anthony, and  
Prof. Alastair Lucas for Canadian Arctic  
Resources Committee;

Mr. Glen W. Bell and  
Mr. Gerry Sutton For Northwest Territories  
Indian Brotherhood and  
Metis Association of the  
Northwest Territories;

Miss Lesley Lane for Inuit Tapirisat of  
Canada and  
The Committee for Original  
Peoples' Entitlement;

Mr. Ron Veale and  
Mr. Allen Lueck, for Council for Yukon Indians

Mr. Carson H. Templeton, for Environmental Pro-  
tection Board;

Mr. David Reesor, for Northwest Territories  
Association of Munici-  
palities;

Mr. Murray Sigler, for Northwest Territories  
Chamber of Commerce.

347  
M835  
Vol. XXVII

CANADIAN ARCTIC  
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 14 1975

LIBRARY





I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:

John Ivor CLARK  
Garry Wood HOLLINGSHEAD  
Edward Charles McROBERTS  
William Alexander SLUSARCHUK  
Norman Reuben MORGENSTERN  
Richard H. COOPER  
R.M. HARDY  
Guy Leslie WILLIAMS  
- Cross-Examination by Mr. Scott (cont) 3280

EXHIBITS:

96 " Long term effects of vegetative cover on  
permafrost stability in an area of discon-  
tinuous permafrost" by K.A. Linell, 1973,  
2nd Conference on Permafrost at Yakutsk,  
pages 688-693 3354





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 10, 1975.

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. GENEST: Mr. Commissioner,  
before Mr. Scott resumes, Dr. Clark has a correction  
I believe to make to some evidence that he gave  
yesterday about drill holes. He's concerned that he  
may have given an incorrect impression.

DR. CLARK: Yes, we were dis-  
cussing Swimming Point, Mr. Commissioner. After the  
discussion, I had the opportunity to have a close  
look at the drawings to which Mr. Scott and Dr.  
Hollingshead were referring, and I found that all of  
the drill holes that had been drilled are in fact  
shown on that cross-section, and are extracted from  
a report entitled "Investigation of Major River  
Crossings in the Northwest Territories" by R.M. Hardy  
and Associates, for Northern Engineering, and it was  
dated June, 1974 and its number 257 on the list of  
reports.

DR. HOLLINGSHEAD: Excuse me,  
Mr. Commissioner. If I could have just another 30  
seconds to clarify the record with regard to the  
calculation of these volumes that we were thrashing  
around yesterday.

MR. GENEST: That's the  
volumes of --

DR. HOLLINGSHEAD: The volumes





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 of the trench at the Point Separation crossing, --  
2 to calculate those volumes, one would simply  
3 multiply the average cross-sectional area of the  
4 trench. Multiply that by the length of the trench  
5 and divide it by 27 to convert it to cubic yards,  
6 and I believe that for the preliminary designs as it  
7 stands, the downstream crossing which was the first,  
8 the figure was about three-quarters of a million  
9 cubic yards and for the upstream, or the second  
10 crossing, it would be of the order of one million  
11 cubic yards, for a total of one and three-quarter  
12 million cubic yards.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: That was  
14 Point Separation, the two trenches at Point Separat-  
15 ion?

16 DR. HOLLINGSHEAD: The twin  
17 crossings at Point Separation, sir.

18 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,  
19 could I tender as an Exhibit, this peat bog drawing?  
20 As number --

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Speckled bog --

22  
23 MR. SCOTT: I'm sorry.  
24

25 (SPECKLED BOG COMPLEX DRAWING MARKED EXHIBIT  
26 NUMBER 95)  
27  
28  
29  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

JOHN IVOR CLARK  
GARRY WOOD HOLLINGSHEAD  
EDWARD CHARLES McROBERTS  
WILLIAM ALEXANDER SLUSARCHUK  
NORMAN REUBEN MORGENSTERN  
RICHARD H. COOPER  
R.M. HARDY  
GUY LESLIE WILLIAMS, Resumed:

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT, CONTINUED:

Q Dr. Slusarchuk, yesterday  
we dealt with the Calgary test site, and I'd like to  
deal briefly with the other three. Are you the person  
to whom I should direct the questions, or is that --  
is it Mr. Williams or -- or shall we just try you and  
--

A Okay, sir.

Q -- if we need assistance  
or advice or advice from anybody?

Now, I take it as a matter of  
general principle, that it was considered by the  
company, or the predecessor company necessary to  
establish Arctic test facilities, to provide precedent  
or experience in the design, construction and perhaps  
to a limited extent, the operation of buried chilled  
line in permafrost terrain. Would that be correct?

WITNESS WILLIAMS:

A Yes, I think that is one  
of the reasons I gave in that slide presentation of  
why the test facility was constructed.

Q I take it that that is the  
substantial reason, that in fact there is no other





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 reason? That's why you have the test sites?

2 A Would you repeat the reason  
3 again, please?

4 Q The reason is the reason  
5 that you have, the purpose being to provide some  
6 precedent or experience in the operation of this type  
7 of line in the terrain?

8 A Yes, I think broadly speak-  
9 ing, that covers the more detailed reasons that I  
10 suggested.

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q And the Prudhoe Bay  
test-site, I understand, reviewing your evidence, that  
construction commenced there about March of 1971.

A I think that is correct.  
I don't recall giving evidence to that effect. None  
of the panel were involved in the construction of the  
Prudhoe Bay test site.

Q Well, see reference  
I think is page 28 of the application; and I understand  
that construction commenced at Sans Sault in January  
of 1971, preceded by preliminary site investigation  
in June of 1970.

A Yes, actually the road  
construction at Sans Sault started in July, late July  
of 1970.

Q And that construction  
at Norman Wells was commenced in April or early in  
1971.

A I think that's correct.

Q Now I take it from those  
dates that it is reasonably obvious that the decision  
on the location of the sites must have been made in  
1970 or earlier.

A That is certainly  
correct with respect to Sans Sault.

Q Yes, well what about  
Prudhoe Bay, construction commenced there in March of  
1971. Wouldn't it be a fair inference that the  
selection of that site had occurred in 1970?





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A I really just don't  
know, Mr. Scott.

Q And with respect to  
Norman Wells, construction was under way there in  
April of 1971, wouldn't you agree with me that the  
site was probably selected in 1970?

A Again I'm not sure,  
but it could be late '70 or early '71.

WITNESS HARDY: I have a  
little bit of background on that, Mr. Scott, that  
might be useful as far as the Norman Wells site is  
concerned. The group that planned that, I don't  
think, were organized in the summer of 1970. The  
site -- the first dealings I had with them was the  
fall of 1970, and they were just organized.

So that it was the organiza-  
tion or the planning of the test-site at Norman Wells  
was done on a very rapid program, almost a crash  
program. There were two competing groups, you see,  
and the second group that put in the test facility  
at Norman Wells was trying to catch up time-wise.

Q So would you agree then  
that the site at Norman Wells was probably selected  
in late 1970?

A I would agree with that,  
yes.

Q Well now, I take it,  
Mr. Williams, that in 1970 the major source of infor-  
mation available to the owners was the Mackenzie





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

Valley Pipeline drill-holes of which there were a considerable number?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: Yes, that drill-hole information was mainly in that report by Ripley - Klowne done for the Mackenzie Valley which the Northwest project participated in, and received that information.

Q Yes, and in that report, I think, as I understand it, dealt with some 750 drill-holes, approximately.

A I don't recall but that sounds reasonable.

Q And that virtually none of them were on the route, and some of them were some distance away from the route.

A Which route, sir?

Q The ultimate route of the pipeline, the ultimate route that the applicant has chosen.

A I would think there were some that were fairly close to the present route on the east side of the river. Certainly there were some on the west side of the river. There were quite a few on the interior route, and I think there were a few along the Yukon Coast, not too many but there were some along the east side of the river.

Q Would you agree with me that the majority of them were some distance from the ultimate route?





Clark Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, , Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A I would take your word  
for it probably.

MR. GENEST: Is that your  
information?

MR. SCOTT: That's my information.

MR. GENEST: I think we can  
take that; if we dispute it, I think we can accept  
that kind of statement.

MR. SCOTT: Yes.

Q And with respect to  
those drill holes, I understand that you had available to you the bore hole logs.

A Yes sir.

Q Yes, but that there was  
no personal knowledge on the part of the applicant  
or Northern Engineering of any of those drill holes.

A We did not participate  
in the taking of field data collection of that  
information, no.

Q Well, I put it to you  
that that was the -- apart from inspection by sight--  
that was the information that you had at hand that  
enabled you to select these three Arctic test sites.

A Again I can only speak  
for the Sans Sault site. We had that information and  
we had terrain typing information by Dr. Mollard,  
and we had reconnaissance trips along the valley,  
inspection trips at sites along the proposed route.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q Yes. I take it that another company made the selection at Prudhoe Bay and at Norman Wells.

A Certainly Northern Engineering were not involved in the selection of those sites.

Q So you have no way of knowing the basis on which they were selected of your own knowledge within your company.

A That is right, only what we read in the reports.

Q Well, Mr. Williams, at least with respect to Sans Sault, of which you do have personal knowledge, I suggest to you that Dr. Mollard's terrain typing was not available in 1970 at the time the selection at Sans Sault was made. Does that refresh your memory?

A Oh, I think he had -- I'm pretty sure, I'm certain he had done a fair bit of terrain typing in the Mackenzie Valley at that time, and I think he had some high level photography, high level government photography encompassing the Sans Sault site.

Q Well, let me just --

WITNESS HARDY: I am positive from my own connection with the selection of that site and the input that R.M. Hardy & Associates had that Dr. Mollard was a participant in discussions on the selection of the Sans Sault Rapids test facility.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Mortenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

Q Well perhaps Dr. Mollard should be allowed to speak for himself, and I refer you, Mr. Commissioner, to his evidence in Volume 18 at page 2058, which I will read beginning at Question 23 -- at question on line 23.

" I am concerned about that," and the previous pages deal with the question of when the terrain typing was done. "I'm concerned about that, doctor, because the canned evidence, if I can use that expression, reveals that a route was given to the consultants at a certain period of time and I presume that a route would not have been selected without your terrain analysis maps.

" Now, does that help you to tell me when you got in to the hands of Northern Engineering, the terrain analysis map that deals with this corridor in substance?

"A Well, I really cannot tell you the date because we did it over such a period of time and I think the major part of it was done in '72, though. That would be my recollection, '72, '73".

Now I put it to you, Mr. Williams, that if Dr. Mollard is correct, that the substantial part of his work was done in '72-73, it would follow that you would not have available that work at the time when the Sans Sault route -- I'm sorry, when the Sans Sault site was selected?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: I'm sure that the work that Dr. Mollard is referring to



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1       there is the work along the route that was adopted  
2       after the merger of the Gas Arctic System and the  
3       Northwest Project, which is on the east side of the  
4       Mackenzie River. Prior to that, Dr. Mollard had done  
5       considerable terrain typing along other routes for the  
6       Northwest Project, and Mackenzie Valley Oil Pipeline.

7                       Part of that work was -- the work  
8       for Northwest Project in 1970 and '71, was along the  
9       west side of the Mackenzie River. Part of the work  
10      that Dr. Mollard did in that same period was for  
11      Mackenzie Valley Pipeline, which was -- which part  
12      of the route was along the east side of the river.  
13      He did this work jointly for formerly Northwest Project  
14      and Mackenzie Valley. We shared the costs of the  
15      photography, and Dr. Mollard's services.

16                    Q       Just so we'll have it, is  
17      it your position that Dr. Mollard's recollection is  
18      faulty, or that he is mistaken in his dates?

19                    A       No, he was referring to the  
20      route ~~that~~ was selected after merger, the one for  
21      Canadian Arctic Gas.

22                    Q       Well, what precisely did  
23      you have from Dr. Mollard in 1970, according to your  
24      recollection?

25                    A       For the Northwest Project  
26      we had terrain typing on photography. In Alaska,  
27      in the interior route, in Canada, along the coastal  
28      plain in Canada, and the -- and along the west side  
29      of the Mackenzie River down to Camsell Bend, and from  
30      there to a point about -- terminating about Cold Lake,





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Alberta.

2 Q And I take it that since  
3 that time you have continued to make proposed alterat-  
4 ions or alternatives to the route, leading to the  
5 two alternatives or quasi-alternatives that were put  
6 before us close to the opening of this inquiry, the  
7 Fort Simpson route change and the cross-delta con-  
8 sidered proposal, if I may call it that?

9 A We have considered many  
10 alternatives since that time. Originally, the two  
11 major alternatives were the coastal route and the  
12 interior route, but we are constantly looking  
13 to try to improve the routing.

14 Q The point I am making,  
15 Mr. Williams, is that I understand from the evidence,  
16 the canned evidence, and what has been said here,  
17 that these test facilities are of considerable  
18 importance? You don't disagree with that, do you?

19 A No sir.

20 Q And they're relied upon, by  
21 the applicant, as proof in part, that the conceptual  
22 theories advanced will work out?

23 A Yes, sir.

24 Q And indeed in the canned  
25 evidence at page 8, the answer is

26 "The test facility sites were  
27 carefully selected to provide permafrost and  
28 terrain conditions which were representative  
29 of considerable lengths of the proposed route,  
30 as it was realized that the pipeline would





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 encounter terrain units and conditions different  
2 from those that could be selected at any given  
3 site, the site conditions selected tended  
4 towards the more difficult end of the possible  
5 range".

6 Now, I suggest to you that that  
7 statement goes a little far, doesn't it?

8 A No sir, I agree with that  
9 statement, with respect to Sans Sault, of which I  
10 have particular knowledge.

11 Q Well, what about the other  
12 two?

13 A Well I know, for instance,  
14 that the Norman Wells site is located in Dr.  
15 Mollard's terrain unit GLB which we considered to be  
16 one of the more difficult terrain units along the  
17 route.

18 Q Well let me suggest to you  
19 that at the time the selections were made, the appli-  
20 cant had very little knowledge indeed of the precise  
21 terrain typing or of the route that it would ulti-  
22 mately advance?

23 A Certainly with respect to  
24 Sans Sault, when the test site was selected, we were  
25 considering a route along the west side of the  
26 Mackenzie River, yes.

27 Q And what happened is even  
28 after you moved to the east side, you've changed  
29 almost half of it, or are close to changing half of  
30 it, since then?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                   A     Yes, but we are in very  
2 similar terrain units as defined by Dr. Mollard,  
3 whether you are on the east side or the west side of  
4 the river.

5                   Q     Well, is it really intended  
6 to advance the proposition that in 1970, these three  
7 sites were selected with any knowledge of what the  
8 ultimate route would be?

9                   A     We had routes selected  
10 there that are not the route as filed, but I don't  
11 think that's a major factor in selecting test sites.  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q How can the applicant say that the sites were selected to the more difficult end of the possible range when it wasn't known where the route was going to go? To begin with, you end up on the wrong side of the river.

A I think I just said a few minutes ago or a few seconds ago that the terrain units that the sites are in are typical of the more difficult range of soil conditions along the route as forwarded in the exhibit.

Q Well, I put it to you respectfully that a much more accurate statement of the selection process is contained in the interim report, "Arctic Test Facility, Mountain River, Northwest-Territory", at page 10-2.

MR. GENEST: Mountain River?

MR. SCOTT: Mountain River is Sans Sault, as I understand it;

Q And it says at the top of that page:

"The Mountain River site was the most favorable alternative relative to accessibility, climate and general terrain conditions."

That those three factors are the factors that led to its selection.

A Yes, I don't think that's inconsistent.

Q Well, there is nothing in there, and I put it to you there was nothing in your



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

mind about selecting a site that tended toward the more difficult end of the possible range, as you've said in the canned evidence.

A In the slide presentation I think I indicated that before that site was constructed, we went into that area and did some soils drilling, some very extensive soils drilling. We spent the best part of three weeks in and around that area doing soils drilling, and we found the material that we were looking for that represented the more difficult end of the terrain and soils condition that any pipeline along the Mackenzie Valley corridor would encounter.

Q Let me just wrap it by saying, Mr. Williams, that I suggest to you that you didn't know in 1970 whether it was the most difficult end of the possible range.

A I don't think I agree with that, sir.

Q All right.

A The other day you made reference to the fact that some or all of the Sans Sault site was located in the terrain unit D.L. and I don't think this is correct, and I probably would like to take a few minutes to pursue that to show why we think that that is the more difficult end of the scale.

Q Well, if Mr. Genest has no objection, I don't want to impede you.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

After all it is important, it seems to me, that everything depends on these test sites.

THE COMMISSIONER: Would you just repeat the point you're now going to seek to develop?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: Well, last week there was a reference made, Mr. Commissioner, to the fact that the Sans Sault test site is located in a terrain unit described as Dr. Mollard -- I'm sorry, I said D.L., I meant H.T., high terrace.

THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, Mr. Anthony raised that.

A Mr. Scott, I'm sorry.

Q I thought it was Mr. Anthony that raised it, but anyway go on.

A Yes, it was Mr. Anthony and at the time Mr. Scott made the observation that this represents less than 1% of the route. I have prepared a few view graphs in this regard and if you are interested, sir, I would like to show them to demonstrate that the soil conditions in fact at Sans Sault are in a difficult soil condition. But it will take a few minutes to set up the view graph.

THE COMMISSIONER:

Go ahead. You go ahead and Mr. Scott can pursue other matters, perhaps.

MR. SCOTT: I take it I'm not being timed if Mr. Williams wants to do it now I have no objection. I can go on or --

A I could come back to it



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

any time.

MR. SCOTT: It seems to me  
it might be a subject for re-examination.

THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.

Well, we'll come back to it later today.

MR. GENEST: Another day, sir?

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, it  
doesn't matter to me. Just so long as Mr. Williams  
is given this opportunity, I'd like to see the graphs.

MR. GENEST: It just seemed to  
me that if Mr. Scott is going to pursue an attack on  
the conclusions we've drawn from the Sans Sault test  
facility as being unrepresentative or being of limited  
value because of the limitations he described, it  
might be well for the Inquiry to have that in mind  
before he pursues his line of examination.

MR. SCOTT: I don't care, Mr.  
Commissioner, if my friend wants to get this evidence  
before you now or in re-examination, it's a matter  
of complete indifference to me.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well,  
let's see it now then and then we don't have to spend  
any more time discussing it when we will see it.

WITNESS WILLIAMS: In the  
slide presentation that I gave I think I mentioned  
that Dr. Mollard selected five potential sites for  
a test facility, and that this was his first selection,  
Now, within this area of the general Sans Sault area,  
here is the Mackenzie River, the Mountain River, the





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

Sans Sault Rapids themselves are in this area, and this report, I think, is early 1970, Mr. Scott. This is a copy of a drawing from that report of Dr. Mollard's. Within the Sans Sault area he has outlined with the numbers and the dashed lines five potential sites, and he's pointed out in his report that there are thermokarst, the TK, the thermokarst features, the eroding banks along the Mountain River, there is of course along the Mackenzie -- it's close to the Mackenzie which was one requirement. There is potential off-loading sites here, thaw features, so this was in his report that he gave to us to explore for the specific soil conditions, and in the report I think -- and somewhere here he suggests what kind of soil we might find, the prevalent soil type is expected to be mainly stratified silt, fine sand, made grade from sands at the base of the section to silt at the top and certainly we consider silts with reasonably high ice content to be one of the difficult terrain units that must be crossed.



1 So that was the basis for his  
2 original recommendations, and this --

3 Q If I could interrupt, Mr.  
4 Williams, I am not quite clear, because I haven't  
5 looked as to whether that report of Dr. Mollard, from  
6 which that slide is taken, is listed. Perhaps Mr.  
7 Marshall could let me have the number of it in due  
8 course, not now, or if it's not listed, produce it.

9 A I looked for it in Calgary,  
10 and I couldn't find it. The map that I had was  
11 extracted, that I had at Sans Sault with me when we  
12 were doing the test drilling at the site.

13 If we don't have it I'm sure  
14 Dr. Mollard does, but I didn't ask him for a copy  
15 and I'm not sure whether it's listed.

16 Q Well Mr. Williams, you've  
17 got another free weekend coming up, you can have a  
18 look for it.

19 A This particular map is  
20 of taken out/a report on sub-surface conditions, Mountain  
21 River area by R.M. Hardy and Associates, and it's  
22 dated August the 31st, 1971. And it was the only one  
23 that I could find that covered the test site areas,  
24 showing the terrain units as described by Dr. Mollard,  
25 and certainly from this very small scale map, you  
26 would say that the test site is located in the terrain  
27 unit HT, high terrace, but remember that this is at  
28 a scale of about 4 miles to the inch, 4 miles to the  
29 inch, and you see a boundary line here between the  
30 HT and the DL, plus the GLB.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 And in the slides, as I have  
2 them upstairs, I can get them if you want, but I think  
3 you'll remember that we showed in the slide that there  
4 was a bit of relief along -- and I should have shown  
5 that in the previous one. I should have pointed that  
6 out that Dr. Mollard shows what he calls escarpments,  
7 generally old and moderately sloping. The escarpment  
8 dropping off to the Mackenzie River in this direction,  
9 but also a smaller escarpment dropping here, and  
10 also here, and I think he has described it as being  
11 possibly an old channel between the Carcajou River  
12 here and the Mountain River here.

13 And getting back to this one,  
14 and I talked to Dr. Mollard about this on the tele-  
15 phone, and he suggested this division between HT and  
16 DL, plus GLB, is in fact, along that escarpment that  
17 you saw that I pointed out in the slides of the Sans  
18 Sault test site. And certainly the camp, the fuel  
19 facilities that you saw, the main equipment facilities,  
20 are located on top of this terrace, but part of the  
21 active test facilities themselves, the buried pipeline,  
22 are below the terrace. In fact, in the DL, plus GLB.

23 And if you -- there's quite a  
24 widely circulated volume by Dr. Mollard. I think it's  
25 Volume II of his series that was prepared jointly for  
26 Mackenzie Valley and the Northwest Project, where he  
27 outlines the stratigraphy of these various terrain  
28 units, and I think he explained quite fully when he  
29 was here, that these terrain units refer mainly to the  
30 geological history of the material; how it was



1 deposited or how it came into being, and these colum-  
2 nar stratigraphy illustrations are taken from  
3 that volume.

4 Q Mr. Commissioner, if I  
5 could interrupt just for a moment, I don't want to  
6 impede this evidence except to observe that it's  
7 clearly evidence that Dr. Mollard should have given,  
8 and there will be submissions in due course as to  
9 its weight, but I don't want to impede it from being  
10 heard.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Carry on,  
12 Mr. Williams.

13 WITNESS WILLIAMS: I would have  
14 been very pleased for Dr. Mollard to give this. I'm  
15 sorry it didn't come up while he was here. He could  
16 do it much better than I am able to do it.

17 But anyway, out of his book  
18 you can see that with the terrain unit H.D., he suggests  
19 zero to five feet of peat overlaying organic silts  
20 and clays, overlying gravels and sands, and his  
21 stratigraphy of the unit DL you can see is very  
22 similar, one to four and a half feet of peat overlying  
23 organic silts and clays. The difference here is that  
24 this is finer material at the lower depths, sand,  
25 whereas it shows some gravel. But at the bottom of  
26 the trench, the depth that we're interested in, the  
27 10 feet, they're very similar.

28 And if you go to the GLB unit,  
29 also illustrated in his Volume II, you can see that  
30 there's not that much significant difference to one





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 to five feet of peat overlaying silts and clays.

2 That overlaying sands and gravel till .

3 We just have a couple of view  
4 graphs here to show some of the actual drill hole data.  
5 The column on the left is taken from the Sans Sault  
6 site, it's active section number 4. It's drill  
7 hole B-90 and you can see that there is about an  
8 inch and a half -- I'm sorry, one and a half feet of  
9 peat, overlaying some organic material, including  
10 ice, overlaying silt, sandy silt, silty sand, with  
11 fairly high ice contents. These two are shown  
12 differently, this is a visual ice content which is  
13 high. This is a drill hole along the pipeline route,  
14 on the east side of the river near Mile 507 in  
15 terrain unit GLB. Again, you can see the two feet of  
16 peat overlaying clays, overlaying silts. High ice  
17 content certainly in the peat layer, fairly high ice  
18 content in the silt, but generally the drill hole  
19 logs are not that widely separated.

20 Again, this is a comparison  
21 of a drill hole number B-I35 in active test section  
22 number 3 at Sans Sault. In this case, we have four  
23 and a half feet of peat, overlaying organic silt and  
24 clays, and again, of course, the ice content in the  
25 peat is very high, but in this case, in the silt it's  
26 in this particular area it's not so low.

27 And here we have a drill hole  
28 in terrain unit DL, near mile 424 on the east side  
29 of the river, with again, four and a half feet of  
30 peat overlaying silts with some sand. Again, not



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 that much difference.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Again on the left is drill  
3 hole data from section 1, that's the active -- I'm sorry,  
4 that's the buried section, the cycling section, where  
5 we change the temperature periodically, section 1,  
6 drill hole B-203, organic clay for 2 1/2 feet, and  
7 then silts, medium plastic, very high ice content,  
8 this particular drill hole encountered ice and I  
9 think I illustrated what the ditch wall looked like  
10 in this section. There were various large pieces of  
11 ice encountered in the trench wall, and along the  
12 pipeline route at Milepost 192, 300-odd miles from the  
13 previous one I showed. Again we have 2 1/2 feet of  
14 peat overlaying clay with high ice content, and organ-  
15 ic material in the clay. Again it's shown to illustrate  
16 that the drill hole data at Sans Sault and the informa-  
17 tion we got from logging the ditch illustrates that  
18 this is similar to what we consider to be the difficult  
19 soil type along the pipeline route.

20 MR. ANTHONY: Before Mr.  
21 Scott proceeds, I'd like to first of all, because this  
22 evidence has just come out at this stage and I haven't  
23 had an opportunity of either viewing it or preparing  
24 any questions on it, and I am advised that there are  
25 some very serious questions to be asked, I would like  
26 perhaps to discuss with Mr. Genest or with the Commission-  
27 er at a later stage to have Dr. Mollard perhaps return  
28 and comment on Mr. Williams' statements of the simil-  
29 arities of terrain classification which Dr. Mollard  
30 has classified as being different, and I think that



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 could possibly be done at a later stage when we've all  
3 had a chance to look more closely at it. But I wonder  
4 if I could ask one question of Mr. Williams now with  
5 respect to, I think, the very first statement he said  
6 about selection, and about Dr. Mollard's selection.  
7 I think he said something to the effect of, in his  
8 first graph, that Dr. Mollard had picked the Sans Sault  
9 location as a first choice and I was wondering, was he  
10 saying that Sans Sault was selected by Dr. Mollard as  
11 a first choice for a test facility, or was the parti-  
12 cular location at Sans Sault selected by Dr. Mollard?  
13 Did he say, "If you're going to be at Sans Sault, here  
14 is the place to go?" Or did he say, "If you're going  
15 to set up a test facility along the Mackenzie, Sans  
16 Sault is the general location"?

17 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Can I refer  
18 to the evidence that I read into the hearing before  
19 presenting that slide information? Oh, you don't have  
20 the -- let me just check and we'll get it verbatim.

21 MR. ANTHONY: I think that  
22 point is being addressed. I have the -- in case anyone  
23 else was struggling with the same problem. The discussion  
24 about the characterization of a high terrace and the  
25 percentage along the route was in Volume 22, March  
26 20th, at page 2560, in that area for people that want  
27 to make a reference, but I don't think that this  
28 particular question I directed was dealt with  
29 at that stage. I was hoping that it would be a fairly  
30 simply question as to whether the location was selected,





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 or just a part at Sans Sault was selected by Dr. Mollard.

3 A What I said earlier last  
4 week was that we asked Dr. Mollard to look at the  
5 aerial photographs along the route and suggest some  
6 potential test sites. He selected five areas as poten-  
7 tial sites. His first choice, because it had a wide  
8 variety of conditions within a small area, was the  
9 Sans Sault area. In addition to that, he had -- he  
10 selected some test sites many miles from Sans Sault, but  
11 within the Sans Sault area he selected what he thought  
12 were five smaller areas to look at. This, in fact,  
13 we did. We went in and spent two to three weeks drilling  
14 until we found the soil conditions that we were looking  
15 for. Does that answer the question, Mr. Anthony?

16 MR. ANTHONY: Well, perhaps  
17 there is just one supplemental thing. Those five  
18 suggested locations were all at Sans Sault, according  
19 to what you've presented now, and I was wondering --

20 A No, I'm sorry. I left  
21 the wrong impression. He selected five locations that  
22 were separated by -- hundreds of miles along the  
23 -- I think as far as 100 miles spacing along the Mac-  
24 kenzie River.

25 MR. ANTHONY: I see, and then  
26 he also suggested the particular location at Sans  
27 Sault as the best of the five at Sans Sault? As a  
28 secondary decision.

29 A No sir.

30 Q Sorry.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A He selected five general  
3 areas of which Sans Sault was one.

4 Q And the exact location at  
5 Sans Sault was decided --

6 A By myself.

7 MR. ANTHONY: Fine, thank you.

8 A On the view graph that I  
9 showed earlier, within the Sans Sault area he outlined  
10 five sub-areas for exploration. We looked at some of  
11 them, not all of them. When we found the soil and  
12 ice condition that we thought was representative of  
13 the more difficult end of the scale along the Mackenzie  
14 Valley with respect to soil types, we stopped looking  
15 and I laid out the actual facilities that resulted  
16 at Sans Sault.

17 MR. ANTHONY: I think I best  
18 leave that at this stage. The more serious questions  
19 perhaps should wait until I've had a chance to look at  
20 it. Thank you.

21 MR. SCOTT: Well, Mr. Commis-  
22 sioner, I'm glad to find things aren't much different  
23 here than in Toronto, that Mr. Genest has brought with  
24 him the technique of utilizing a question as a launching  
25 pad to deal with the evidence of the previous panel.

26 MR. GENEST: Well, sir, I  
27 don't want to prolong this by lawyers' argument, but  
28 it seemed to me that this is an important subject, that  
29 if I had raised it in re-examination my friends would  
30 have been on their feet asking to go into it, and



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 better early than late.

3 MR. SCOTT: I don't complain  
4 about it. I just feel that the answer might have been  
5 given if I'd asked Mr. Williams his name.

6 Q I take it, Mr. Williams,  
7 the effect of what you are saying about Dr. Mollard's  
8 testimony on panel 1 is that while he has devised  
9 three terrain types, H.T., D.L., and G.L.B., that's  
10 correct, he's got those three terrain types on his  
11 maps and defined.

12 A Yes sir.

13 Q And I take it that  
14 what you're saying is that in your judgment D.L. and  
15 G.L.B. are in fact a refinement of H.T. and very  
16 similar.

17 A No, I'm saying that the  
18 terrain types that he gives refer to the geological  
19 history and within those units there can be similarities.

20 Q In short, aren't you  
21 saying that D.L. and G.L.B., in your judgment, are  
22 very close to H.T.?

23 A The stratigraphy for that  
24 particular physiographic division would indicate that  
25 they are quite similar, yes sir.

26 Q Well, Dr. Mollard will  
27 be glad to know that because he won't have to use  
28 so many letters to describe the terrain the next time;  
29 but I'm going to ask you one specific question. It  
30 was observed that on some of the holes that you





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 illustrated that H.T. was underlain by gravel at the  
3 10-foot level, isn't that correct?

4 A It could be. It shows  
5 that -- I think if you read that column the way it  
6 was intended, that maybe in 10 to 15% of it would be  
7 underlain -- would have gravel at the 10-foot level.

8 Q Yes, and gravel is not  
9 traditionally regarded as a frost-susceptible soil.

10 A No sir.

11 Q And that D.L. and G.L.B.  
12 on the other hand were lain -- were underlain at  
13 depths below the pipe by silty sand.

14 A Yes sir.

15 Q And that is a terrain  
16 type of soil that is traditionally regarded as much  
17 more frost-susceptible.

18 A This Sans Sault site  
19 was in permafrost, Mr. Scott. We weren't looking for  
20 frost-susceptible soil at that time, we were more  
21 interested in what happened to the permafrost with  
22 construction and pipeline operation under various  
23 temperature operating conditions.

24 Q I think that's no doubt  
25 correct, but my observation about the type of soil is  
26 also correct, is it not?

27 A Yes, that's right, but  
28 I think Dr. Slusarchuk has illustrated pretty well  
29 yesterday that if it's in a frozen condition there's  
30 not a serious frost-heave problem.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q But apart from that, you  
2 don't quarrel with Mr. Anthony's observation that  
3 the answer he obtained that if HT is the appropriate  
4 designation, about one percent, or a very modest  
5 percentage of the line is found under that terrain  
6 type?

7 A Yes, sir. But the active  
8 sections at Sans Sault are not all located in HT.

9 Q No, but it's substantially  
10 HT, isn't it?

11 A No, sir.

12 Q Well, we can look at the  
13 map and judge.

14 A I think three out of the  
15 four buried sections are not in HT; one of the  
16 buried sections partially.

17 Q Well just if I can go back  
18 where we were, Mr. Williams, with respect to Sans  
19 Sault, is it your position that when this site was  
20 chosen, it was known with assurance that it represented  
21 the more difficult end of the possible range?  
22 To use the words of the canned evidence.

23 A Yes sir, that was my  
24 determination from observing the drill holes that  
25 were done to prove up the site.

26 Q Now, I take it that you  
27 have provided in your report on the sites, the  
28 objectives of the tests that were conducted at each  
29 site? I don't want to go over them, but there is a  
30 report that lists a series of objectives, and I take





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Mor genstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams

Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 it that that is a complete list of the objectives of  
2 each of the projects?

3 A Can I have a reference?

4 Q It's Chapter 8B135, Arctic  
5 Test Facilities. I don't want to go through it, I  
6 just want to have your assurance that the objectives  
7 set out for each of the test sites in that paragraph,  
8 were in fact the limit of the objectives that -- for  
9 which these test sites were designed?

10 MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott, what  
11 are you reading from?

12 MR. SCOTT: The location, design  
13 and capacity of facilities, Section 8. At page 21.

14 A I don't think the objectives  
15 are limited to page 21, are they, Mr. Scott?

16 Q They follow through in  
17 the succeeding pages.

18 A Page 18 and continue on.

19 Q The chapter, as I recall  
20 it, is set up in such a fashion that there is a heading  
21 objective and then some comment or report on how  
22 that tested out, and there are a series of objectives.  
23 I just want to be sure that you've listed there all  
24 the objectives of the test sites, for which they  
25 were designed.

26 A Oh I'm not sure, I would  
27 guess it's reasonably close. I --

28 Q All right, that's --

29 A -- haven't read it lately.

30 Q Well now, I don't know



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 whether you or Dr. Slusarchuk should answer this,  
2 but I take it that at some of the test sites, measure-  
3 ment was made of the surface settlement of the land?

4 A Yes, sir.

5 Q Was that done at all three?

6 A I think so.

7 Q Well now, were comparisons  
8 also made between the predictive surface settlement and  
9 the measured surface settlement?

10 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

11 A At Norman Wells, they had  
12 cold test sections and warm test sections, and I re-  
13 call from their report that they did make such  
14 comparisons for the warm test sections.

15 Q Well, is there any document-  
16 ation in support of those comparisons? We've been  
17 unable to find any. Perhaps I can take you to figures  
18 5 through 13 in Section 8B137 of the application.  
19 And that, Mr. Commissioner, is a series of figures  
20 that are described depth of thaw and surface settle-  
21 ment at a number of locations at the test sites.  
22 And I want to know if those are predicted amounts  
23 or actual amounts, on the route.

24 These are -- I'm sorry, I mis-  
25 stated it. These are figures that show the settlement  
26 on Sections of the route, and I want to know if  
27 these are predicted figures or if they are actual  
28 figures.

29 A Is this in Section 8B13.7?

30 Q Yes.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                   A     Okay, it's not in the  
2 section on test facilities, now this is in the geo-  
3 thermal section.

4                   Q     Yes.

5                   A     Those are predicted ones,  
6 sir.

7                   Q     Well, have any of them  
8 been measured, actually?

9                   A     These were examples that  
10 we gave, sir, and they were        predicted measurements  
11 here.

12                  Q     Yes, but what I'm concerned  
13 about is of what value are they if there is no inform-  
14 ation as to the extent to which your predicted values  
15 and the actual values match?

16                  A     I don't recall making such  
17 a study myself sir, on that, and other than the one  
18 with this company that they made at the hot test  
19 section, I'm not sure that any others have been made.

20                  Q     Well what I'm asking, and  
21 perhaps Mr. Genest can deal with it later, is there  
22 any documentation, report or study which indicates  
23 by measurement, by actual measurement, the extent to  
24 which your predictions of surface settlements are  
25 realistic?

26                  A     I think we can outline  
27 or produce documents for you, sir, out of the public lit-  
28 erature here, that would document measurements that  
29 have actually been made at test sites, and we have  
30 followed similar procedures.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q But I take it, just to  
2 have it clear, that there has -- as far as you know  
3 now, and maybe there is some other information that  
4 you can produce later, but there has been no comparison  
5 of actual settlements at any of those locations with  
6 your predicted figures?

7 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

8 A: May I comment here? That  
9 may not be so. One of the major objectives of some  
10 of the Mackenzie Valley buried oil pipeline activities  
11 was to evaluate the prediction of settlement due to  
12 thaw with observation , and papers have been published  
13 and another is in press on that type of activity.

14 Q Well that's so, as I  
15 understand, Dr. Morgenstern, for one limited test  
16 site at Inuvik. Now what I'm concerned about, is  
17 there any documentation that shows that with respect  
18 to this project and the places where it is going to  
19 run, that your ability to predict the thaw settlement  
20 has been proved by doing actual measurements, to  
21 compare?

22 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

23 A Other than that warm berm  
24 sections, I am not familiar with reports that speci-  
25 fically deal with that item, sir.

26 Q Well what's the use of  
27 them, then?

28 A The use of?

29 Q Of the predictions?

30 A It is not a novel idea, sir,



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

in it  
1 to thaw soil that has 20 percent ice/and assume that  
2 it is going to settle 20 percent when the ice thaws and  
3 melts and flows away. This has been discussed for  
4 quite some time in the open literature that has been  
5 documented in various places, and it is to that body  
6 of literature that I was referring to, and it is that  
7 sort of knowledge that I brought along with me when I  
8 came to this project, and perhaps that's one reason I  
9 never thought of prime concern to try and set up some  
10 documentation on it.

11 I was involved with that project  
12 that Dr. Morgenstern was previously referring to with  
13 Mackenzie Valley Pipeline through my relationship  
14 with the National Research Council, and it did not  
15 seem to me to be a pressing item at that time.

16 Q Well, now let me turn to  
17 another matter. It's our understanding that both  
18 buried and elevated pipeline sections were experimented  
19 with at Sans Sault, is that correct?

20 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Yes, Sir.

21 THE COMMISSIONER:

22 Excuse me, Mr. Scott.

23 Just before we leave that, Dr. Slusarchuk, so that  
24 there is no misunderstanding here, you're saying  
25 that if you have a good idea what the ice content is,  
26 in the soil, then you can predict the extent of sur-  
27 face settlement of the land owing to thaw and it  
28 doesn't get you anywhere to carry out measurement at  
29 some later time to test the accuracy of your predict-  
30 ion.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                   The important thing is to know  
2                   how much ice there is in the frozen soil, is that  
3                   your position?

4                   WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

5                   A       That's correct, sir, and  
6                   a great number of these sort of comparisons have been  
7                   made in the past and documented in the open literature,  
8                   and that is why we did not undertake to do it ourselves.  
9                   We thought that that was more or less an acceptable,  
10                  or more or less a routine sort of method of doing it.

11                  Q       I take it that in short  
12                  the proposition is that you are prepared to assume  
13                  that that could be done with assurance?

14                  A       Yes, sir.

15                  Q       Well now, turning to the  
16                  buried and elevated pipeline sections that were  
17                  experimented with at Sans Sault, is there a report  
18                  available on the results with respect to the elevated  
19                  pipeline sections?

20                  WITNESS WILLIAMS:

21                  A       No sir, nothing really  
22                  beyond the mention of it perhaps in that red  
23                  volume, that interim report at Sans Sault.

24                  Q       Well, may I ask why that  
25                  part of the experiment was not reported on?

26                  A       There wasn't really a  
27                  great deal to report on. The elevated section was  
28                  put in to look at in case there was a remote possi-  
29                  bility that we might have to go to that mode of  
30                  construction. We did observe it through the life of



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the test and really very little happened, except  
2 the coating deterioration that I referred to in the  
3 slide show, so there wasn't a great deal to report  
4 on.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q I put to you, Mr. Williams,  
3 that before you conducted that experiment you had al-  
4 ready decided, or your client had decided as a matter  
5 of policy, that there was going to be no elevated  
6 sections to the pipeline.

7 A No sir.

8 Q All right, well then  
9 wouldn't it be useful, if I can respectfully say so,  
10 to have a report on what you found out about the  
11 elevated experiment?

12 A I think since the test  
13 site has been constructed we have decided that it's  
14 desirable to have no or as little as possible elevated  
15 pipeline. As I say, we did observe it, and nothing of  
16 any significance happened. I suppose a 2-page report  
17 could be written, we just didn't think it was necessary  
18 or worthwhile.

19 Q Well, I take it that  
20 you're not saying that there will be no elevated  
21 sections of this pipeline.

22 A No sir, I think we said  
23 that there will be some around compressor stations.

24 Q Well, are the results  
25 of your studies, if not in report form, in some other  
26 form available?

27 A No, just in peoples'  
28 heads. Except for some elevation measurements on file,  
29 that was done in the course of taking the survey  
30 around the site, which was done at fairly frequent





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 intervals.

3 Q Well, I put it to you  
4 that there is some experience with elevated pipelines  
5 in other parts of the world, is there not?

6 A Yes sir.

7 Q Yes, and therefore one  
8 considering the construction of a pipeline of this  
9 type in Arctic terrain would look to precedents in  
10 other parts of the world.

11 A Yes, we have certainly  
12 read the Russian literature.

13 Q And those precedents in  
14 Russia, in part in Alaska, and in China, are elevated  
15 pipelines.

16 A The one being constructed  
17 in Alaska, a considerable portion is going to be  
18 elevated, yes. As I say, we have read the -- quite a  
19 bit of the Russian publication.

20 Q And are you familiar  
21 with the 800 mile Chinese elevated pipeline?

22 A No sir, I am not.

23 Q All right.

24 MR. GENEST: Are you?

25 MR. SCOTT: Yes. I can refer  
26 the Inquiry to a report in, of all places, the  
27 "Victoria Times", of Monday, January 13 of 1975,  
28 which refers to a -- ironically the report is an  
29 Associated Press Report out of Tokyo but it reports  
30 on the construction of an 800-mile pipeline in China



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 in Arctic terrain.

3 MR. GENEST: I hope that one  
4 wouldn't have the same status as a publication by--

5 MR. SCOTT: I shouldn't say  
6 "Arctic terrain", it doesn't say that. It crosses  
7 rivers at 260 places, railways at 10 places, and  
8 highways at more than -- and then the copy is blotted  
9 but there is room for one figure and then there are  
10 two zeros, so it's anything from 100 to 999 places.  
11 I'm sorry, 900 places, and it crosses frozen earth,  
12 marshes and rapids.

13 Q I put it to you, not  
14 to be facetious, Mr. Williams, that the experience  
15 outside Canada has generally speaking been with elevated  
16 pipelines in Arctic or sub-Arctic terrain.

17 A This is excluding the one  
18 in China, is it?

19 Q We'll leave that out  
20 for the moment. I don't want to ask you about a  
21 pipeline with which you're not familiar, at least in  
22 theory.

23 A Yes sir, I understand that  
24 quite a few of the Russian pipelines in Arctic terrain  
25 are elevated.

26 Q And because of that  
27 experience, anybody approaching the question of  
28 building a pipeline as a matter of principle would want  
29 to thoroughly consider what other people have done,  
30 especially when they're the only people.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

A Yes sir.

Q Yes, and with that in mind you not only went -- your people not only consulted with the Russians but you built a portion of the test facility to deal with the elevated pipeline option.

A Yes, we went to great expense to have some of the Russian publications translated.

Q And you went to some expense to build a facility that would deal with the elevated pipeline option.

A Yes sir.

Q Well now, can you tell me really the reason why the public is not afforded an opportunity to examine the results of your experience when it approaches this question of how the pipeline in Canada's Arctic will be built?

A I think we'd be pleased to write a 2-page report on the elevated section at Sans Sault for someone who is interested. All I can say is what I've said before, is that after the construction at Sans Sault we came to the conclusion that very little of this system should be elevated and what happened at Sans Sault didn't teach us a great deal and we didn't consider it worthwhile reporting; but it could be done.

Q Well, I wouldn't ask you to write a report which you have in advance determined is only going to be two pages, and tell us nothing.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 But I presume that as you've done an extensive analysis  
3 of the other alternatives, and have done some analysis  
4 of this alternative, that it would be helpful to have  
5 the results so others can compare the options. However,  
6 if it's not available, it's not available.

7 Now I'm led to believe that  
8 two of the seven test sections at Sans Sault were  
9 placed in slopes to check their performance, is that  
10 correct?

11 A Yes sir.

12 Q Yes, and at one at least  
13 there was a large shallow slide that occurred. Is that  
14 correct?

15 A Yes.

16 Q And at the other there  
17 was an erosion problem of some consequence.

18 A Yes sir, not great  
19 consequence, I wouldn't say. A minor consequence, yes.

20 Q Now I take it, therefore,  
21 I concede these were only experiments, but they were  
22 not experiments that were totally successful in that  
23 context. Things happened that were unfortunate.

24 A In hindsight, sir, I  
25 think what happened could have been predicted. In the  
26 slide presentation for the sake of brevity, I didn't  
27 deal with the inactive sites. If you are going to  
28 explore it, I would like to give a little bit of  
29 history of that situation.

30 Q Well, I'm simply going to



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

ask you if there is any more detailed information than is made available in the Sans Sault report on the nature of these experiments and analysis for their failures? Or is the Sans Sault Report, which is already a document, all we're going to get on that subject?

A I think Dr. McRoberts has examined the failure on the Mountain River near Sans Sault and could probably discuss it. I don't think he has written a report on it.

Q We'll be asking generally about slope problems a little later, but what I want to understand is, is there a more detailed analysis available of those two problems than the one that is contained in the Sans Sault Report?

A No, there isn't right now. We do plan some additional work on that Mountain River situation.

Q I take it that this kind of experiment was not done at any of the other facilities?

A I am fairly certain that there was one inactive section installed at Prudhoe Bay. Oh, I'm sorry, I was referring to inactive sections in general. The one at Prudhoe Bay was certainly, there was no slope there and the inactive section was on the flat.

Q So that the Sans Sault experience, as far as test facilities are concerned, related to slopes, is what you have.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Yes sir.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, just  
so I am not left out of the picture, what -- was there  
a slope failure at Sans Sault?

A Yes sir, there was.

Q On the Mountain River?

A On the bank of the  
Mountain River.

Q And was there an inactive  
buried pipe involved in the failure?

A Yes sir, there was.  
Shall I give a brief description of those inactive  
sections at Sans Sault?

THE COMMISSIONER:  
Yes, I will just ask  
Mr. Scott how he feels about that.

MR. SCOTT: I don't object  
to that.

THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, go  
ahead. I've been to Sans Sault, I think I've seen  
the sections active and inactive. I've seen the  
Mountain River and the Mackenzie River, so I don't  
think that we need a slide, I think you can tell me.

A Yes sir. In the  
planning of the test facility at Sans Sault, we were  
wondering what would happen to buried pipe during the  
period of construction and the time that it came into  
operation when chilled gas was in the line to stabilize  
the soil around the pipe, so we installed six 80-foot  
lengths of pipe in various situations within a, I think,





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 a two or three-mile radius of the main facility at  
3 Sans Sault. We selected the areas to try to represent  
4 the most difficult situations we could find within that  
5 radius. Three of them were located in flat areas, mostly  
6 adjacent to thermokarst ponds that would become flooded  
7 to various extents during the spring breakup, spring  
8 thaw. One was located on the bank of the Mountain  
9 River, one was on the bank of the Mackenzie River, and  
10 one was constructed across a small stream just a few  
11 feet wide, and one of them in particular south of the --  
12 about a mile and a half south of the test site, was  
13 flooded<sup>by</sup> as much as two feet of water in the spring  
14 following the installation, and we were extremely  
15 surprised that the pipe did not float out of the ground.  
16 We have some theories on why it didn't, but by all that's  
17 right it should have floated out.  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



1 THE COMMISSIONER: That was  
2 an 80 foot length?

3 A That was an 80 foot length  
4 that was capped on the ends so that no water could  
5 enter the pipe, and risers were placed on the pipe so  
6 that we could take survey shots on it to see what  
7 was happening. And with the exception of the one on  
8 the bank of the Mountain River, none of them moved  
9 that we could determine with our surveyor's level.

10 The one on the Mountain River,  
11 we excavated a trench about, I think it was 150 or 200  
12 feet long, and of course we just had 80 feet of pipe  
13 to put into the trench. We put it in the lower portion  
14 of the trench, and then we backfilled the whole  
15 thing.

16 The wall of the trench in that  
17 area was particularly interesting, the ice in the  
18 old cracks was particularly interesting, but in the  
19 backfill and restoration, we took no standard precautions  
20 that would be done even in southern pipeline  
21 construction. We just backfilled it and compacted it  
22 as best we could, and we didn't install any cross-  
23 berms to control the drainage, or any ditch plugs.  
24 None of these things that Dr. Clark has referred to  
25 in the last week, we just backfilled it and left it,  
26 which we thought was subjecting the pipe  
27 to a bad situation.

28 And it did stand up through  
29 the spring break-up, but during a heavy rain in the  
30 summer, water was channelled down the ditch, and



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 it did pond around the pipe, and the slope failure  
2 occurred. But I want to emphasize that no good con-  
3 struction practices were followed in the backfill  
4 and restoration of the section. In fact, the top  
5 hundred feet or so of this ditch that was excavated  
6 had had no pipe in it, and because it was fairly  
7 high ice content soil, during the spring and summer  
8 thaw, a fair bit of subsidance along the ditch line  
9 did occur.

10 And with respect to how the  
11 slide was initiated and what-not, I think Dr. Mc-  
12 Roberts would be pleased to speak about it.

13 WITNESS MCROBERTS:

14 A I would be quite pleased  
15 sir, if that suits you, right now.

16 THE COMMISSIONER: If there is  
17 anything to add to what Mr. Williams has said, just  
18 so we understand what did occur and the circumstances  
19 under which it did. Just suit yourself.

20 A Yes, Mr. Commissioner, I  
21 have three slides that you might be -- that illustrate  
22 the feature that we were talking about.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, let's  
24 adjourn for coffee and then look at those slides  
25 briefly when we come back. Would that be all right?  
26

27 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)  
28

29 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

MR. SCOTT:

Q Mr. Williams is out for  
a moment, I understand from Mr. Marshall, but I don't  
see any reason perhaps why we can't proceed with  
what Dr. McRoberts is going to do.

THE COMMISSIONER: Before you  
go ahead, Dr. McRoberts, since it appears we will be  
sitting this afternoon, to accommodate the typists,  
we'll take a break from 12:30 to 2:30 for lunch.

MR. SCOTT: Yes, sir. I presume  
Mr. Williams is out getting some more slides.

WITNESS MCROBERTS:

A What I would like to do,  
Mr. Commissioner, is just quickly present a couple  
of slides to illustrate what happened in active site  
number 2 at the Sans Sault test facility, and make a  
couple of brief comments as to the various factors  
that actually caused failure.

Can I have the first slide,  
please? This picture was taken in the fall of 1974,  
after four complete thaw seasons, that is to say,  
the pipe was installed in 1970 -- in the winter of  
1970, and there was four complete thaw seasons between  
when the pipe was installed and when this picture was  
taken. This is on towards the end of the year.

The Mountain River is down here,  
and the Mackenzie is over here, and the main test  
facility is down in this direction, and we are about  
a mile and a half away. We're on the banks here of  
the Mountain River, and it's difficult to see in this



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 picture, perhaps we can have the next one.

2 We're looking now into the bank,  
3 and the bank of the Mountain River, or the top of the  
4 bank is about through here, and the pipe is installed  
5 down about an eight degree slope here, and that's to  
6 say, eight degrees of inclination, and then a 16  
7 degree slope down to here. There's a heavy tree cover  
8 that be about here, and that marks the beginning  
9 of the slope, so there's two components of the slope;  
10 an 8 degree section and a 16 degree section.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: So the pipe  
12 was on a gradient as if you were going to cross the  
13 river?

14 A That's correct. Yes.

15 Now, let me get to that. To  
16 there  
17 the pipe, /was a ditch down from here down to here,  
18 and because we had so much pipe at the time or the  
19 people that were responsible -- Mr. Williams had so  
20 much pipe at the time, he installed pipe in this  
21 deeper section of the slope here to here, and no pipe  
22 was installed up here. Just as background.

23 Now as you can see, this is  
24 what's developed by 1970, the end of 1974, and the  
25 failure occurred on the steeper 16 degree segment  
26 of the slope.

27 Can I have the next slide, please?

28 This picture is taken past the  
29 break in slope. There's an 8 degree slope that comes  
30 down behind here, and we are now on the steeper



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchukl, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 section. This is the same gentleman that appeared for  
2 scale in one of Mr. Williams' slides earlier. He  
3 comes up to about here on me. Just to put the scale  
4 in perspective, it is a four foot diameter -- excuse  
5 me four inch? Sorry, a 42 inch diameter pipe.

6 You can see the extent of the  
7 slope <sup>failure</sup> and the erosion that has occurred, out  
8 to here and through to here. You can see there is  
9 a very silty clay soil and in fact in some cases,  
10 there are still organics left, there is still backfill  
11 remaining over the pipe. This -- as I emphasized,  
12 the way the pipe looked after four complete thaw  
13 seasons.

14 Can we just back up one, please?

15 There are several factors that  
16 contributed to this failure. The first one is the  
17 method of construction that was followed. As Mr.  
18 Williams pointed out, the practice that the pipe was  
19 put in using very crude techniques, in fact this  
20 surface was cleared by bulldozer, which would not --  
21 which was certainly one practice that we would not  
22 follow in any slope like this, in fact, we would  
23 clear it by hand, and that certainly had an influence.  
24 The pipe was installed and the backfill was put in  
25 in a more or less random manner, with some attempt  
26 at compaction.

27  
28  
29  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 In a slope like this of this angle and that terrain  
3 ~~type~~ I certainly would not recommend that you would  
4 use native backfill. We would, in fact, be using  
5 more select material for backfill under conditions  
6 like that. Furthermore there was no, as Mr. Williams  
7 pointed out, no drainage and erosion control features  
8 put in at the site that Dr. Clark talked about, there  
9 was no sack breakers, there was no chevron type of  
10 breakers to shed the water. There was also, and  
11 perhaps it's obvious, no slope instability as to  
12 slope preventative remedial measures placed.

13 The next -- so the first  
14 contributing factor was the method of construction and  
15 the way not only in the method in which the drain was  
16 cleared and the pipe installed, but also the state in  
17 which the slope was left in the wintertime.

18 The second contributory  
19 factor was there was a period of very heavy rain, a  
20 soaking rain for about seven days. We know this because  
21 we operated a full-scale meteorological station at  
22 Sans Sault Camp, and we measured the amount of rain  
23 over the period, and when the storm and the fog and  
24 the low visibility conditions lifted the site was  
25 visited the same day when the bad weather lifted, and  
26 the people that visited it commented that there was a  
27 considerable slope erosion had occurred. At that time  
28 the pipe was not exposed and the instability that had  
29 occurred was certainly not to the extent that you see  
30 here. It was much, much lesser extent. Since then, of



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 course, the failure, the slope instability has proceeded  
3 sideways but you'll notice it's remained in the 16  
4 degrees component of the slope and not in the 8 degree .

5 The third contributory -- now  
6 in regards to the heavy rain, certainly we had the  
7 feeling that if we had had a properly designed drainage  
8 and erosion control measure, then that would have  
9 obviated, perhaps completely prevented any problems  
10 occurring. However, there are three other factors.

11 The next factor is ice content.  
12 This slope in through here from the observations made  
13 in the ditch wall and from the bore holes that were  
14 put in, certainly indicate that below a depth of about  
15 three feet there was very high ice content soils and that.  
16 certainly contributed to failure. Once we -- the  
17 failure occurred about June or July, my memory doesn't  
18 serve me, I'm just relying on records, I wasn't  
19 associated with the project at that time, but it was  
20 in June or July of '71 that the failure occurred. There  
21 had been a fair development of the active layer by  
22 that time.

23 The fourth contributing  
24 factory in regards to the onset of failure is soil  
25 type. The soil that's encountered here is very fine-  
26 grained silty clay, and if you took the same soil  
27 type and had it in a completely unfrozen state, a  
28 thawed state, had never been frozen, on a slope where  
29 one might experience you'd get a lot of rain, let's  
30 say around Vancouver, and you had it on a 16-degree



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 slope, and you soaked it and it rained and you got  
3 this soil completely saturated with the kind of  
4 material that we encounter here, the kind of strength it  
5 had, the strength properties of that material we'd  
6 expect failure. So in one sense the failure <sup>that</sup> occurred  
7 had nothing to do with the fact that it was a permafrost  
8 slope, from purely geotechnical considerations, and  
9 the flow conditions in the soil with the degree of  
10 saturation, one would expect failure.

11                                   The fifth contributory  
12 factor would be the very thin layer of peat that's  
13 found in through here, the peat is much thicker up on  
14 top. Along the slope and down through here the peat  
15 is very thin. Looking at the banks along the Mountain  
16 River for maybe a length of a distance of '20 to 25  
17 miles or whatever, until the Mountain River gets  
18 right into the mountains, is just one continuous  
19 band of landslides, and this slope in through here,  
20 was historically a slope failure of some  
21 form, and because of that the peat, as you understand,  
22 had not had a long time to develop, there is very  
23 thin, maybe three to four inches of peat, and there-  
24 fore the rate of thaw of the material and the depth  
25 of thaw would be enhanced because the peat cover was  
26 very thin.       In situations such as this, and keeping  
27 in mind the ice content, keeping in mind the soil type,  
28 the type of preventative slope stabilization methods  
29 that we propose to use would inhibit failure so that  
30 if we used that, if we choose, as we would in a condition





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 as severe as this to stabilize the slope and to provide  
3 erosion control measures, nothing would occur. We  
4 choose -- at least my understanding of the matter is  
5 that while we have had some of our revegetation people  
6 have been mad keen to get in here and see if we  
7 could stop it, and I'm sure we could stop it if we  
8 choose to, we have taken the view that we would like  
9 to - it is a test section and we appreciated that when  
10 we got in here we had a pretty darn good chance of  
11 failure, we couldn't expect anything else outside  
12 the banks from the Mountain River all the way up  
13 to where the Mountain River goes into the mountains  
14 proper, it has many different types of forms of  
15 landslides, and we certainly appreciated that we had  
16 a very good chance of getting one, and we haven't done  
17 anything with it, we just wanted to see what would  
18 happen.

19 The interesting point here is  
20 that to my knowledge the pipe has really not moved  
21 appreciably up to 1973. I believe that it has moved  
22 slightly towards the end of 1974, but I am not positive  
23 about that. Certainly there was no movement to the  
24 pipe for three years, and as I say, any of the measures  
25 that we propose to use are, in our opinion, fully capable  
26 of preventing anything of this sort from occurring.

27 Thank you.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you,  
29 Dr. McRoberts.

30 MR. SCOTT: Before you turn



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 the photograph off, Dr. McRoberts, could I have the  
3 first one?

4 A Yes.

5 Q From what elevation would  
6 that be taken?

7 A I don't know, Mr. Scott.  
8 I didn't take the picture in the first place, but this  
9 scale here, the clearing would be how far, 200 feet.

10 WITNESS WILLIAMS: It would  
11 be about 100 feet wide.

12 WITNESS McROBERTS: It would  
13 be about 100 feet wide. This section from here to here  
14 we put in an 80-foot section of pipe.

15 Q Is that the lower section?

16 A This is from about here  
17 to here, is about 80 feet, and there's another 80 feet  
18 here of ditch that was dug but no pipe was put in.

19 Q I asked because Mr. Gibbs  
20 was in some alarm when he saw the short man, he thought  
21 you were putting in a 60-inch pipe.

22 Is that an example from the  
23 air, of subsidance? What's that ditch that runs along?

24 A This ditch here was the  
25 section of the inactive site that was dug and then  
26 backfilled.

27 Q So that the site is  
28 filled?

29 A I beg pardon?

30 Q The pipe is in the ground--



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A There is no pipe in the  
3 ground from here to here.

4 Q I see.

5 A And in fact because there  
6 is no pipe, we are missing about 10 cubic feet of volume  
7 per foot run of pipe, so that if there had been that  
8 pipe in the ground, then there would in fact be a mound  
9 left over here.

10 Q I see.

11 A The backfill, because  
12 there was no longer any peak to protect up in this  
13 section, and because we came in here and we dug a  
14 ditch, we put everything back that would be got, more  
15 or less, I imagine there might have been a small amount  
16 of material just left here --

17 Q What I'm getting at, Dr.  
18 McRoberts, is, is that an empty trench or is it a  
19 filled trench we can see?

20 A The trench here was  
21 filled with backfill.

22 Q So the photograph shows  
23 it as filled?

24 A There is a depression  
25 across the trench of, I would say, up to about a foot.

26 Q Yes, so there is a depth  
27 in the trench of a foot after it's been filled.

28 A Yes.

29 Q Why is that?

30 A Because there was no





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 pipe put in the ditch.

3 Q I see. Well now, dealing  
4 with the conditions, sir, I take it, Mr. Williams, it's  
5 obvious to say, is it, that you didn't intend this  
6 modified disaster to occur for the purpose of having  
7 a slide for us.

8 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Well, Mr.  
9 Scott, we weren't exactly babes in the woods, but we  
10 were like Alice, we were wondering about a few things  
11 so we installed this test-site.

12 Q Yes, you tried to do the  
13 best you could on that site. It wasn't a planned  
14 failure, was it?

15 A It wasn't a planned  
16 failure, no sir. But we didn't do the best we were  
17 capable of, no.

18 Q You know that now, don't  
19 you?

20 A And certainly I knew  
21 it then.

22 Q Why would you conduct  
23 an experiment based on less than your best knowledge  
24 of how to do things? What kind of experiment is that?

25 A That's part of the learn-  
26 ing process, I would say. We wanted to see what would  
27 happen.



1 Q Well, you wanted to show  
2 what would happen if you used inadequate techniques,  
3 is that what you're telling us?

4 I put it to you, and I hope I  
5 am being fair, Mr. Williams, that when you laid this  
6 pipe you attempted to do, within reason, the best job  
7 that you knew how to do at that time. You've learned  
8 a lot since, but it was the best job you knew how to  
9 do at that time?

10 A No, I really wouldn't say  
11 that. The technique of installing sack breakers on  
12 slopes of this nature is fairly standard pipeline  
13 construction practice. We chose not to do that.

14 Q But your construction of  
15 the pipe, your burial of the pipe, your filling in,  
16 was the -- I put it to you, the way you would have  
17 done in the state of knowledge at that time?

18 A No, sir.

19 Q No.

20 WITNESS MCROBERTS:

21 A It was also well appre-  
22 ciated in 1970 that if you used bulldozers to clear  
23 terrain, that you could expect damage to occur, and  
24 it was chosen to clear with bulldozer and not by  
25 hand.

26 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

27 A It's a point of  
28 illustration.

29 Q Bulldozers are not going  
30 to be used on this project?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A I beg your pardon?

2 Q Bulldozers are not going  
3 to be used on this project?

4 A As Dr. McRoberts said, not  
5 for clearing on a slope of this magnitude.

6 Q I see.

7 A Because that would be hand  
8 cleared.

9 Q Well Dr. McRoberts, let me  
10 ask you this: Apart -- you listed the factors that  
11 in your judgment contributed to this failure. Leaving  
12 aside the construction techniques, the other factors  
13 you listed were all conditions such as the ice rich  
14 soil, the gradient , the rain and so on. Those are  
15 all factors that occur in nature at one place or  
16 another?

17 WITNESS MCROBERTS:

18 A That's correct.

19 Q Yes. They're all factors,  
20 therefore, that we may anticipate will occur from  
21 place to place in varying combinations throughout  
22 this pipeline?

23 A That is correct.

24 Q And I take it that just  
25 listing those factors, can't we agree that that  
26 illustrates as graphically as can be done, the neces-  
27 sity for detailed knowledge of the conditions of the  
28 site of each specific site?

29 A No, I wouldn't suggest  
30 that it indicates that you need detailed knowledge of





1 each specific site. You would find, by and large,  
2 that a site that occurred in this type of terrain and  
3 that kind of flow, would be reasons of their geologic  
4 history would/very similar, and you would expect the  
5 conditions to repeat over many hundreds of miles of  
6 slopes throughout the Mackenzie River Valley.

7 Q I see.

8 A And you would find active  
9 features like this over many hundreds of miles of slope.

10 Q And would you agree with  
11 me that it illustrates clearly the importance of  
12 identifying and analyzing in depth, the problem areas  
13 as they are found throughout the pipeline?

14 A Yes, I couldn't agree with  
15 you more and that's what I'm doing.

16 Q Yes. And that really will  
17 involve hundreds of locations?

18 A I wouldn't say it would  
19 involve hundreds of locations, no.

20 Q How many locations do you  
21 think it will involve?

22 A I would suggest that for  
23 this type of slope failure --

24 Q I'm not talking just about  
25 that type of slope failure, I'm talking about other  
26 failures that may be unconnected with those.

27 A I understood you to be  
28 talking about the combination of circumstances that  
29 I was talking about, mainly thin peat cover, soil  
30 type, ice content, and given that combination of



1 circumstances, I would say right now we have a pre-  
2 liminary idea of how many slopes of this type, and  
3 this combination of circumstances that we will be  
4 dealing with. I have in one of the slope reports  
5 that I prepared for Arctic Gas, a catalogue of slopes  
6 that, albeit be a preliminary catalogue, that will be  
7 updated during the final design stage, we have, right  
8 now, a pretty darn good idea of how many sites we  
9 have, and where their locations are.

10 Q Would you want to drill an  
11 area like that at all?

12 A Certainly, I would drill a  
13 representative number of these types of slopes.

14 Q At what interval?

15 A It would depend how many  
16 -- in what interval you mean, on a mileage basis  
17 along the pipeline?

18 Q On any basis you're pre-  
19 pared to tell me.

20 A I would say that for a  
21 critical combination which we are talking about, I  
22 would subdivide it into a climatological region  
23 because obviously the depth and the rate of thaw is  
24 of some consequence, given a general climatological  
25 region, I would then consider the terrain type that  
26 I was dealing with, and then on that basis decide  
27 how many slopes I had to look at until I had a good  
28 feel for what's there.

29 Q I take it that there  
30 would be about 700 slopes on the route that would



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 match a proportion of the configuration that is shown  
2 here?

3 A No.

4 Q How many would there be?

5 A I would -- this slope is  
6 overall about -- I would say from the top to the  
7 bottom of the slope completely -- you appreciate we  
8 didn't clear all the way down as I understand it,  
9 I would say that the slope is on average, greater  
10 than about 12 degrees in inclination and about 100  
11 feet high.

12 I would say -- I could refer  
13 to a -- that's the approximate --

14  
15 Q How many slopes of  
16 approximately of 12 degrees would there be?

17 A Could you just give me a  
18 minute?

19 Q Okay.

20 A Well what specific piece  
21 of information would you like?

22 Q Well first of all, I take  
23 that there are almost 700 slopes that have a degree  
24 of more than 3 degrees?

25 A That's correct.

26 Q Yes. Well, how many would  
27 there be, let us say, more than 8 degrees?

28 A More than 9 degrees, I  
29 don't have a calculator, and I'm not a very good  
30 adder, but say 150. More than 9 degrees and in





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 height from -- if one wanted to include slopes that  
2 were greater than 100 feet high as this one is, and  
3 greater than 9 degrees, then we're talking potentially  
4 of worrisome conditions in about 30 slopes.

5 Q How many slopes are of a  
6 degree, let us say, more than 10 or 12, whatever figure  
7 is convenient.

8 A More than 12, I would say  
9 there's about 100 --

10 Q Yes.

11 A -- of which I guess, of  
12 which about 80 are less than 100 feet high.

13 Q Yes. Well now, I take it  
14 that the combination of physical circumstances that  
15 occurred here will not necessarily occur in all of  
16 those, or even in many of them?

17 A Most certainly, the cata-  
18 logue -- the table I'm looking at, and perhaps I  
19 should tell you what the table is, it's Table 1.2.1  
20 in the report, interim report draught "Slope Stability  
21 and Permafrost Terrain" of December, 1974. I have no  
22 page number for it. It follows page 4.

23 And this table was put together  
24 using the most conservative assessments of terrain  
25 conditions along the right-of-way.

26 Q Well that was because you  
27 are not taking any risks at all, I understand that.

28 A No, I wanted to put  
29 together a composite picture of the number of slopes  
30 I had, considering the worst conditions, I wasn't



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 taking any risks when I was doing that.

2 Q Well I take it that this  
3 kind of combination of physical circumstances can  
4 occur in varying proportions and combinations on  
5 other slopes that are less than 10 or 12 degrees?

6 A Yes, that's correct.

7 Q Yes. So that subsidance  
8 of this type is a risk in a wide variety of slopes,  
9 depending on what you know about the underlying soil,  
10 what you can predict about the rainfall and a variety  
11 of other physical factors?

12 A Yes, and no. As I pointed  
13 out here, counsellor, the slope angle here was 8  
14 degrees and it does -- it's between 7 to 9 degrees  
15 in the section. The terrain conditions that we  
16 encountered in here are, in my opinion, given the  
17 thin moss cover and the very high ice rich -- the  
18 very high ice contents of the soil and the soil type  
19 itself, are more or less the worst condition which  
20 is why Mr. Williams put the facility in here in the  
21 first place, and in fact, nothing, as you quite  
22 clearly see happened.

23 Under those circumstances, I  
24 would say the slopes less than 9 degrees have in  
25 fact performed adequately well, and it is only the  
26 slopes over say 9 degrees that worry me and we have  
27 addressed ourselves to how many they are. And of those,  
28 many would not encounter the -- in the steeper --  
29 you will understand in the type of matrix of classi-  
30 fication I have developed, I have had to -- excuse me,



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 categorize or catalogue the slope based on the average  
2 sloping inclination and the total height, in order to  
3 expediently package the information. And many con-  
4 ditions on the higher slope, we also -- excuse me,  
5 we also classify them as being potentially unstable,  
6 based on the terrain feature that occurs on top of  
7 the bank.

8 Now, under many circumstances  
9 in fact, the terrain feature, let us say it is GLB,  
10 is the surface veneer, but underlying that surface  
11 veneer and going down, you may encounter till, which  
12 is is much more stable and in fact bedrock, but under  
13 many of the remainder of those slopes, you find  
14 characteristically because of the natural processes that  
15 form the slopes, that the more susceptible material  
16 would have failed long in the past, and they are more  
17 or less at stable angles and that then in  
18 turn overlies other material that is inherently  
19 more stable.

20 Q Now, could I just have  
21 the third slide, please?

22 No, I'm sorry, it's the other  
23 one.

24 Now that's after the repair work  
25 is underway, is it?

26 A There's been no repair  
27 work done here at all.

28 Q I see, that is the slide,  
29 that's how the slide looks after it is cleared.  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam.by Scott

1  
2  
3 A This picture was taken,  
4 as I thought I had made clear, in the fall of 1974.

5 Q To what depth was the  
6 pipe buried?

7 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

8 A I think it had about three  
9 to three and a half feet of cover, Mr. Scott.

10 Q Thank you.

11 WITNESS MCROBERTS:

12 A I think perhaps you can  
13 see -- you probably could get a good indication here,  
14 Mr. Scott.

15 Q I see.

16 A You can see the total  
17 change between here and here, and that may have  
18 something to do with it.

19 Q Yes. Now, what volume of  
20 earth, approximately, would have been moved by that  
21 slide?

22 A Over a period of four  
23 years now that we're talking about, let's say about  
24 20 yards wide by one yard deep, that's 20 yards times  
25 20 yards down the slope, that's 400 square yards --

26 Q Yes.

27 A -- in four years, a hundred  
28 yards per year.  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q That would be regarded  
3 as a relatively modest slide, wouldn't it?

4 A I would say that it  
5 wasn't a modest slide, no. It is very similar to the  
6 type of landslide that -- well, it is in fact a type  
7 of landslide the way it's now developed that I would  
8 call a skin flow, and you can find in fact, I would  
9 say, quite modest in regards to the extent that it  
10 still hasn't occurred over the entire width of the  
11 right-of-way. You find this type of landslide occurring  
12 in river banks similar to what you find here, over  
13 miles of the same river bank one after the other.

14 MR. SCOTT:

I take it, Mr. Genest,  
15 that the construction panel will be dealing with repair  
16 questions? Is that correct?

17 MR. GENEST: Either the constu-  
18 ruction or operation and maintenance.

19 MR. SCOTT: Perhaps Mr.  
20 Williams just knows, while I think of it, what sort  
21 of equipment would be brought in to repair a slide  
22 of that dimension?

23 WITNESS WILLIAMS: If this  
24 occurred all at once, as it didn't, there were pre-  
25 liminary indications that this was happening and --

26 Q Well, assume it did occur  
27 all at once.

28 A Assuming it occurred all  
29 at once, if the security of the pipeline was not in  
30 danger, then I would think the operation and maintenance



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 people would wait until wintertime and they would come  
3 in with fairly heavy equipment, haul in additional  
4 material and repair the drainage protection dykes.  
5 You could have equipment up to D-7 size equipment,  
6 Mr. Scott.

7 Q If the integrity of the  
8 pipe was at issue, at risk, and it had to be done in  
9 the spring or summer, what would be done?

10 A Then the emphasis would  
11 be on soft track equipment, or if the terrain allowed,  
12 emphasis would be put on an air cushioned vehicle to  
13 bring the equipment and the repair materials in.  
14 Helicopters would also be relied on to the greatest  
15 extent possible.

16 WITNESS McROBERTS: Possibly  
17 I could also point out that given our understanding of  
18 the mechanism of failure in this type -- that is  
19 involved in this type of failure, complimented in  
20 fact by our actual experience here, the integrity of  
21 the pipe would not be threatened under any conceivable  
22 circumstances that I can think of the first year.

23 Q Is that -- without getting  
24 into too much detail -- is that the, is that physically  
25 the dimension of the failure that occurred on the  
26 Pointed Mountain line, or is it greater or smaller in  
27 terms of volumes of earth?

28 A I know nothing about the  
29 Pointed Mounted line.

30 Q Well, in terms of volume





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 of earth, Dr. Hardy, is that same size, smaller or  
3 greater?

4 WITNESS HARDY: In the Pointed  
5 Mountain situation, there were -- there was one  
6 location very similar to this, we haven't even dis-  
7 cussed. But of the ones that we have discussed, at  
8 crossings, the dimensions far exceeded the dimensions  
9 here.

10 Q Yes, would they be eight  
11 or ten times the dimensions shown there?

12 A Well, probably not more  
13 than ten times.

14 Q Yes. All right, thank  
15 you. Now, Mr. Williams, I have no further questions  
16 in connection with the slides.

17 Mr Williams, at Sans Sault  
18 or any other test site, have experiments been conducted  
19 with the recommended stabilization measures for shallow  
20 slope instability?

21 WITNESS WILLIAMS: We did  
22 undertake two restoration operations at Sans Sault, I  
23 think it was inactive section 2 on the bank of the  
24 Mackenzie, and six, which was across -- the one across  
25 the Narrow Creek, we did some restoration. Now whether  
26 that's the prescribed method --

27 Q I raise the question  
28 because in the application there are certain recommended  
29 stabilization measures that the applicant indicates he  
30 will utilize in the event of shallow slope instabilities



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 and I just wondered if you knew offhand whether any of  
3 those techniques had been used at this or any other  
4 test site in order to test them out.

5 A I'd have to review what  
6 the application says with respect to restoration, Mr.  
7 Scott. I can tell you what did go on at Sans Sault  
8 with respect to restoration.

9 Q Well, let me ask you this.  
10 Has any report or study or is there any catalogue of  
11 the way the stabilization techniques that you used at  
12 Sans Sault worked and performed in the ground?

13 A Not -- I think the method  
14 used may have been dealt briefly in this report, and  
15 the effectiveness of the repair is, I don't think is  
16 in an engineering report, it may be in a report prepared  
17 by the botonist, I'm not sure, Mr. Scott.

18 Q I'm simply concerned be-  
19 cause inadvertently, I've no doubt, you had an opportunity  
20 to utilize the recommended courses at this test-site  
21 and I wondered if any studies have been done of which  
22 you're aware on how they worked. Now if you don't  
23 have that information, perhaps you can find it for  
24 us on a later occasion if it exists.

25 WITNESS HARDY: You appre-  
26 ciate, though, Mr. Scott, that this sort of failure in  
27 these pictures is not new to the pipeline practice in  
28 the northwestern part of this continent, and so it  
29 would be a mistake to assume that the remedial measures  
30 that are in that report are dealing with completely



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 new situations, as far as the people who offered that  
3 report are concerned.

4 Q Oh no, but I would, Mr.  
5 Williams, ask if there is any report that you could  
6 ask your counsel to produce it to us, it seems to us  
7 consistent with seizing every opportunity to experiment  
8 this would have been a suitable occasion to do so.

9 WITNESS WILLIAMS: I'd like  
10 -- Dr. McRoberts reminds me that probably in one of  
11 the later Sans Sault reports that are on the list,  
12 there are some pictures of the re-vegetation at the  
13 inactive section No. 6 on the bank of the Mackenzie  
14 and probably at the Small Creek crossing, I would  
15 have to review that to answer properly.

16 MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott,  
17 could I interrupt? I just want to be clear on the  
18 kind of report you're trying to ascertain exists.

19 MR. SCOTT: Well, I want to  
20 know first of all if any of the recommended stabilization  
21 techniques were tested at this test-site or indeed at  
22 any other.

23 Our research  
24 report doesn't indicate anything about that.

25 If they were tested  
26 there with this or other opportunities, it would  
27 be helpful to see them.

28 MR. GENEST: This would be a  
29 test of recommended stabilization techniques which does  
30 not exist as a matter of conventional pipeline practice.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross- Exam by Scott

MR. SCOTT: No, I am simply saying there may be conventional techniques. I am simply observing that in a sense a golden opportunity was made available to the applicant to test its techniques on the ground, and I wondered if that was done and what the results of it were.

Q Well now, I'd like to turn to one other matter. Dr. Slusarchuk, are you familiar with the work of Linell, reported at the Second Permafrost Conference based on Alaskan experience which indicates that the removal of trees is a consequential factor of importance in degrading permafrost?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: I think I perused that report, sir. I have no specific details of it.

Q Well, just so we'll have it as a matter of record, the report is by Kenneth A. Linell of the U.S. Army Cold Regions Research & Engineering Laboratory, entitled:

"Long Term Effects of Vegetative Cover of Permafrost stability in an area of discontinuous permafrost."

That was a paper tendered, as I understand it, at the Second Permafrost Conference in the Soviet Union.

A Yes sir, I'm generally familiar with that piece of work.

Q I will try and tender a copy of that report because it contains a graph.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Sorry, Mr. Commissioner, I don't have copies of the  
3 graph but I wonder if Dr. Slusarchuk could look at it  
4 and see if he agrees with the conclusions that are  
5 illustrated in the graph, and then we can --

6 A Yes, I've seen this  
7 graph previous, and I think this graph is a statement  
8 of fact, there's nothing to disagree with.

9 Q You don't quarrel with  
10 it?

11 A No, I don't quarrel with  
12 that.

13 Q What does that show about  
14 the effect on permafrost of the removal of a tree cover  
15 over a period of years?

16 A In this case, it indicates  
17 that permafrost will degrade with time.

18 Q Well, can you give us  
19 -- because I don't read graphs very well, especially  
20 when they're not here -- the figures in that example?

21 A In this graph there are  
22 two areas, sir. There is under the trees and the  
23 moss, and in one case they just removed the moss and  
24 in the other case they removed the trees, and in another  
25 case they removed the trees and the moss. Do you want  
26 me to give you the figures here or here?

27 Q Perhaps you can tell us  
28 in depth of degradation the effect of removing the  
29 trees.

30 A According to this graph



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 after 26 years, for example, the permafrost had degraded  
3 from about three feet to about 13 or 14 feet, after  
4 26 years.

5 Q Where does 26 years  
6 appear? Is it on one of the -- I see. What is the  
7 degradation from the removal of trees after, let us  
8 say, five years?  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30





1                                   A     After five years, the  
2 permafrost table has moved down from a depth of about  
3 three feet to about five to six feet. This is  
4 actually given in meters, I can give them to you in  
5 meters.

6                                   Q     All right, well I am  
7 handling Celsius at the moment, I'm not on to meters  
8 yet.

9                                   A     Okay.

10                                  MR. GENEST: Would the figures  
11 3 to 13 metres?

12  
13                                  A     No, sir, I am translating  
14 in feet.

15                                  MR. SCOTT:

16                                  Q     Well now, would it be a  
17 fair conclusion from that example, that the most  
18 pronounced degradation of permafrost results from  
19 the removal of trees?

20                                  A     The most or a most?

21                                  Q     Compare the effect, if  
22 you can, from the graph of the removal of trees on  
23 permafrost as opposed to the removal of what I take  
24 it to be moss and peat --

25  
26                                  A     Yes, removing the trees  
27 has a significant effect on the degradation of perma-  
28 frost.

29                                  Q     Well, would you agree with  
30 me that obviously the removal of peat and moss



1 continues the process, but that the most marked effect  
2 results from the removal of trees?

3 A That doesn't -- that's not  
4 what this graph shows, sir. Here's -- you can see it  
5 here, this is where the trees are removed, these  
6 this is where the trees and the moss is removed.  
7 Now --

8 Q Take five years.

9 A Well in five years under  
10 one section it's degraded about three feet where the  
11 trees are removed, and then the other degraded about  
12 six feet.

13 Q All right. I will try and  
14 tender that as an Exhibit, Mr. Commissioner.

15  
16 ( REPORT ENTITLED "LONG TERM EFFECTS OF  
17 VEGETATIVE COVER ON PERMAFROST STABILITY IN AN  
18 AREA OF DISCONTINUOUS PERMAFROST" MARKED EX. 96)

19 Q Well would you, did you  
20 hear Professor MacKay give his evidence in the overview?

21 MR. GENEST: Excuse me, sir,  
22 can we give them an exhibit number now, sir?

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, 96.

24 MR. SCOTT:

25 Q Did you hear Professor  
26 MacKay's evidence in the overview?

27 A No sir, I did not.

28 Q No. Well would you agree  
29 with the proposition that generally speaking, the  
30 removal of trees has a very marked effect in terms



1 of degradation over a five year period?

2 A It does sir, it doesn't  
3 necessarily mean it's going to degrade, but it cer-  
4 tainly can and it does have a marked effect where it  
5 will degrade, that's for sure.

6 Q Yes. Well I -- you perhaps  
7 haven't read the paper and I won't ask you to do  
8 so.

9 MR. GENEST: I'm sorry, I may  
10 have created some confusion. The exhibit that I  
11 understand that Mr. Scott will be tendering is the  
12 graph, and not the whole report.

13 MR. SCOTT: Well, I'm going to  
14 table the whole report and it's subject to proof in  
15 the usual way.

16 MR. GENEST: Well in effect  
17 if the rest of the report is not proved, it's not  
18 evidence.

19 MR. SCOTT: Well the graph  
20 will be evidence.

21 MR. GENEST: The graph is  
22 evidence.

23 MR. SCOTT:

24 Q Well Dr. Slusarchuk, I  
25 want to ask you whether you have formed any judgment  
26 as to whether the simple revegetation of the right-  
27 of-way will prevent the degradation that occurs as a  
28 result of the loss of tree cover?

29 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

30 A Yes, I think I've formed





1 an opinion.

2 Q What is your opinion?

3 A Well the revegetation of,  
4 you say of the right-of-way, as I understand it,  
5 the revegetation is only going to take place where  
6 it's been disturbed, not across the whole right-of-way,  
7 so we're just talking about the mound over the top  
8 of the pipe. Is this what you have in mind?

9 Q Well let me put this  
10 situation to you. Let us assume a situation in which  
11 over five -- in which both tree cover and vegetation  
12 have been removed on the right-of-way?

13 A Yes, sir.

14 Q And let us assume for the  
15 purposes of the example, a case that is given in the  
16 graph, that is at five years, that the tree level,  
17 the tree removal has reduced the permafrost to six  
18 feet --

19 A Yes, sir.

20 Q -- and the peat and moss  
21 removal has removed an additional three feet. So the  
22 permafrost has degraded then from three feet to nine  
23 feet?

24 A In --

25 Q In this example.

26 A In your example, yes, sir.

27 Q Now what -- have you any --  
28 what is your opinion as to the effect on the permafrost  
29 of revegetation by sowing grass seed in the -- well  
30 at say, in the second year after removal?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                   A     Well, are you asking me to  
2     consider that we don't have a pipe underneath it and  
3     that within about two or three years the pipe is going  
4     to come on and be cold? You're just talking about  
5     some situation where/<sup>we</sup>stripped off --

6                   Q     For the moment, yes.

7                   A     Well, you are going to get  
8     something like you got in the graph there.

9                   Q     Yes. Well I'm asking you  
10    what the revegetation by the sowing of random grass  
11    seeds, or even the best grass seeds, is going to do  
12    to restore the permafrost?

13                   A     I think that/<sup>if</sup>you just put  
14    grass seed back on there, you would end up degrading  
15    the permafrost for the first few years similar to  
16    what you've seen on that graph.

17                   Q     Yes. Well now, --

18                   THE COMMISSONER: Mr. Scott,  
19    just to clarify, your assumption is that the whole  
20    width of the right-of-way is stripped of vegetation?

21                   MR. SCOTT: Well I'm not saying  
22    that, I'm saying --

23                   THE COMMISSIONER: Well that's  
24    how I understood your question, your assumptions.

25                   MR. SCOTT: I'm taking a strip,  
26    I don't care how wide it is, I don't know how wide  
27    you are going to make it, and I take it that that's  
28    your answer with respect to that situation?

29                   WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

30                   A     Well I thought we weren't



1 even talking about a right-of-way, we were just  
2 talking about some area that is stripped of grass  
3 and trees, grass and moss and reseeded --

4 Q Yes.

5 A -- and what was going  
6 to happen, and in that case I think what's going to  
7 happen is what you see on the graph.

8 Q Well, all right.

9 A In most cases.

10 Q Now, to what extent will  
11 the situation be different if a pipe is buried and  
12 no chilled air put through it?

13 A Well you have to keep in  
14 mind the two dimensionality of our situation, with  
15 regard to the thickness of permafrost and how wide  
16 a strip we're -- we are in fact removing, and if in  
17 that case -- if for example, the disturbed area was  
18 only say the width of the pipe, just to get the  
19 pipe in, because you're talking about a hypothetical  
20 case here, and then put your pipe in, you wouldn't  
21 get the type of permafrost degradation that you're  
22 talking about there.

23 You would get a dip, but you  
24 wouldn't go like that, because of that permafrost  
25 on either side of it would affect it.

26 Q Yes. I take it what you're  
27 saying is that a dimension that must be considered  
28 is the width of the strip --

29 A Yes, sir.

30 Q -- that you expose?





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A Yes, sir.

2 Q Well now, what is the con-  
3 sequence in your judgment if you have formed one,  
4 about chilling the pipe two years after the stripping,  
5 or three years after the stripping and the laying of  
6 the pipe?

7 A I think it will stop the  
8 permafrost degradation completely, in fact it will  
9 -- well it will stop it and return it at lea\_st to its  
10 former level.

11 Q Now let me read you one  
12 statement from Linell's paper --

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,  
14 what will restore it to its former level?

15 A The cold pipe, sir.

16 Q The passage of chilled air  
17 or gas through the pipe?

18 A Yes sir, and we are talking  
19 about the -- as I understand it, we are talking about  
20 the mound above the pipe that's been -- trees have  
21 been taken away and it's now in a bare state, been  
22 reseeded and two years later we turn the pipe on, it's  
23 now cold, and the question is whether or not -- or  
24 what's going to happen to that permafrost, and I'm  
25 saying the cold pipe is going to stop the permafrost  
26 from degrading.

27 MR. SCOTT:

28 Q Well now, Linell is not  
29 talking about a pipeline situation, but I want to put  
30 this statement of his conclusions from his report to



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 you and see if you agree with it.

2 "It is concluded that in an  
3 environment like that at Fairbanks, the main-  
4 tenance or re-establishment of a random mix  
5 type low vegetative cover cannot be counted  
6 on to stop or prevent permafrost degradation  
7 in an area subject to surface disturbance".

8 A I agree with that, sir.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: The reveget-  
10 ation doesn't assist in the storing of permafrost,  
11 it's the passage of the chilled air or gas to the  
12 pipe that is effective, is that the point?

13 A That's the point here,  
14 yes.

15 Q That is your point?

16  
17 A Yes, sir. It certainly  
18 assists, but there is no -- the revegetation would  
19 assist to slow down the degradation. I don't want  
20 to get the point that I'm not saying that, but what's  
21 really going to stop it is the cold pipe.

22 Q Yes.

23 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

24 A I might add a coment,  
25 Mr. Scott, to put this in context, the Fairbanks  
26 site that I know fairly well is very warm permafrost  
27 and we should bear that in mind. It's not character-  
28 istic of the ground temperature along this whole  
29 pipeline.  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRobetts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

MR. SCOTT:

Q Well I think we heard yesterday that the relatively warm permafrost, south of Willowlake, 31.9, that would be typical, wouldn't it?

A Yes.

Q It's not only comparable, but in terms of warmth, warmer than Fairbanks?

A The same sort of region.

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

A All of the permafrost south of Willowlake River is not at 31.9 degrees, sir.

Q No, but it's warmer than the permafrost further north?

A Certainly.

Q Well now, let's take another example. That deals with the pipe. I understand that the applicant is going to build a winter road south of Norman Wells, is that correct, is that your understanding?

A I'm not sure, sir.

Q Well isn't that so, Mr. Williams?

WITNESS WILLIAMS:

A I feel reasonably sure that there are several winter roads proposed south of Norman Wells.

Q Well you proposed several winter roads, isn't that correct?

A Yes, I'm sure that's shown





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 in our construction plans.

2 Q And in all probability,  
3 without tying you down, there's going to be a winter  
4 road that will probably come down close to the  
5 Alberta border?

6 A Yes, we show several winter  
7 roads in that area.

8 Q And you're going to strip  
9 the tree cover in order to build those roads?

10 A Yes, carefully.

11 Q Well now, Dr. Slusarchuk,  
12 what do you say about the effect on the permafrost  
13 in the event that the tree cover and perhaps the low  
14 lying vegetation is stripped in order to build a winter  
15 road?

16 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:.

17 A There's a good chance it's going  
18 to degrade, sir.

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, , Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q To the degrees that  
3 were shown in Linell's article?

4 A I don't -- I think in  
5 general terms it will be, but as I understand the  
6 procedure that is taking place at that test-site, the  
7 data that's actually being reported, year after year  
8 they go in and make sure that the moss and the grass is  
9 removed and that the small brush is cut down. It's  
10 a different situation with ours, as time goes along,  
11 of course, we wouldn't go in there year after year and  
12 do that.

13 Q Well now, let's take one  
14 other example. I understand, Mr. Williams, that a  
15 winter road is going to be built down the easement for  
16 the purpose, for at least one or two years, of construc-  
17 ting the pipeline.

18 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Yes sir, that  
19 would be the snow road and winter road would be incor-  
20 porated in the pipeline right-of-way to the extent  
21 possible.

22 Q Yes, and that will be a  
23 road of what width?

24 A Oh, in the neighborhood  
25 of 30 feet.

26 Q Yes. Well now, Dr.  
27 Slusarchuk, in view of Linell's experience, what is  
28 your judgment about the effect on the permafrost of  
29 the construction and the usage of that road along the  
30 easement?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: It is  
3 quite possible that it will degrade there too, in  
4 some cases.

5 Q Yes, and do you agree  
6 that it will degrade, or <sup>it may</sup> degrade to the extent that  
7 Linell has indicated?

8 A With the -- in general  
9 terms, yes, but keeping in mind that they've gone  
10 back there year after year to clear out the new vege-  
11 tation that comes in, as this new vegetation comes  
12 in it tends to reduce the rate of degradation. So from  
13 that point of view it would be a little bit less for  
14 the same situation there.

15 Q But that's not tree  
16 vegetation, is it? That's grasses and low shrubs.

17 A Well, there's two areas  
18 there that they're talking about, sir. There's the  
19 trees, and they removed the trees, and then they  
20 removed the moss as well as the trees.

21 Q Yes, but I take it that  
22 nothing -- I'm sorry.

23 A Well, in what I've said  
24 there, that under the areas where they said they  
25 removed the trees, I understand that year after year  
26 they come and clean out all the small brush to make  
27 sure that there are no trees starting to grow up in  
28 there, and where they've removed the moss, year after  
29 year they go in there and remove that to make sure  
30 that nothing is coming up to change the initial





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 conditions that they set out to look at. That would  
3 really be a worst case situation, if you allowed the  
4 vegetation to start to re-establish itself, the rates  
5 of degradation would be naturally somewhat less. It  
6 wouldn't necessarily be impeded, but it would be a  
7 little bit less.

8 Q Well now, you've done  
9 some experiments at the test facility with respect  
10 to re-vegetation, I understand.

11 WITNESS WILLIAMS: Certainly  
12 re-vegetation tests were conducted at all sites.

13 Q Yes, and Dr. Slusarchuk,  
14 are those tests consistent with the opinion and  
15 judgment that you've given today?

16 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: I think  
17 they are, sir.

18 Q And I take it then that  
19 what we may anticipate is that where there are roadways  
20 which have necessitated a tree cover removal, that  
21 there will be fairly substantial degradation of perma-  
22 frost.

23 A In some cases, sir, yes.

24 Q What is the practical  
25 implication of that degradation?

26 A You're going to get  
27 settlement, thaw settlement in ice-rich permafrost,  
28 that's one implication.

29 Q Is there any other  
30 implication in terms of water?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A Perhaps you could ask  
3 me the question you're trying to lead me to, sir.

4 Q No, I'm not trying to  
5 lead you to any. I'm just trying to find out. This  
6 is one case I'm not leading you to an answer. Are  
7 there any -- obviously it's going to subside. Are  
8 there any other consequences?

9 A Well, are you talking  
10 about drainage and erosion, sir? Are you talking about  
11 the water that's thawing that has to come up to the  
12 surface?

13 Q Yes, what's going to  
14 happen to that water, for example?

15 A It's going to tend to  
16 migrate towards the surface as the soil settles.

17 Q And then what's going to  
18 happen to it when it comes to the surface?

19 A Well, I guess a great  
20 number of things could happen to it. It could evapor-  
21 ate, it could run downhill if it was on a slope, it  
22 could just pond.

23 Q And then in winter I  
24 take it it will freeze.

25 A Well, I would assume so,  
26 with that surface.

27 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: May I  
28 comment, Mr. Scott, to stress the qualification that  
29 Dr. Slusarchuk noted that we'll get settlement when  
30 we have degradation in ice-rich permafrost? We have



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 examples from the Mackenzie Valley of more substantial  
3 degradation than Linell finds and there is no discernible  
4 settlement at these locations, and the reason why the  
5 degradation of warming is so rapid, so extensive, the  
6 fact is because the ground is likely to be very ice-poor  
7 and the good state of the surface of the ground also  
8 reflects the fact that the ground was ice-poor. So we  
9 should bear that distinction in mind.

10 Q There is going to be lots  
11 of ice-rich soil between Willow Lake and the Alberta  
12 border, isn't there?

13 A There will be some, but  
14 the more ice-rich the material, the less the extent  
15 of degradation in a given period of time.

16 Q Because if in that area  
17 there wasn't much ice-rich soil, that would be a factor  
18 that would favor stopping the chill of the pipeline  
19 earlier, isn't it?

20 A It would be a considera-  
21 tion.

22 Q Yes. So we may anticipate  
23 because of your conclusion that the pipeline is going to  
24 be chilled to the Alberta border, that you're doing  
25 that in part because there will be substantial deposits  
26 of ice-rich soil.

27 A Yes.

28 Q so it's either one or  
29 the other. You could stop the chilling or you're going  
30 to have this degradation.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A My point was to draw  
3 attention that degradation to us means a warming of the  
4 ground. It's only when one degrades ice-rich permafrost  
5 that we get settlement of the ground.

6 Q Well now, Dr. Slusarchuk,  
7 if there is an accumulation of water, is that going  
8 to have any effect on degradation?

9 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: You're  
10 talking about this water now coming up, percolating up  
11 to the surface?

12 Q Yes.

13 A It would tend to reduce  
14 the rate of thawing.

15 Q Well, isn't it one of  
16 your théories --

17 A The movement, the movement  
18 of the water up towards the surface would tend to  
19 reduce the rate of thawing.

20 Q But if there are pools  
21 of water that collect on the surface, does that have  
22 any effect on the degradation of permafrost?

23 A Yes, it tends to keep  
24 the ground a little bit warmer under those pools,  
25 so it increases the rate --

26 Q It increases the rate  
27 and extent of degradation.

28 A How big of a pool are  
29 you talking about? I mean are we covering -- if we're  
30 talking about the kind of pools, for example, that



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 we'd find along the rights of ways, along the test-sites,  
3 for example, it will increase marginally in the first  
4 year or two, and after that it wouldn't increase it  
5 too much because there are two dimensional effects  
6 start to come in.

7 Q Indeed the pool at one  
8 of the test-sites, I forget whether it's Calgary or  
9 Sans Sault, has indeed increased the degradation of  
10 the permafrost under the pool, hasn't it?

11 A I don't have knowledge  
12 of that, sir.

13 Q Isn't that so, Mr.  
14 Williams?

15 WITNESS WILLIAMS: I'm not  
16 sure.

17 Q As a matter of principle,  
18 Dr. Slusarchuk, there's no doubt that it would, is  
19 there?

20 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: No, I  
21 don't think so, for the first few years, you know.

22 Q Well, the rate of  
23 degradation declines, as you pointed out earlier.

24 A Just in general it does.  
25 No water there at all, but then what I'm also saying  
26 is that if you have a small pool, it has more effect  
27 in the first few feet because it's acting more like a  
28 one-dimensional heat supply, you might think of it as  
29 a lake with regard to the first foot or so; but as the  
30 thaw starts to degrade farther and farther down, you



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 start to get the influence of the cold permafrost  
3 around it, and it tends to reduce the rate that you  
4 have under there.

5 Q So would you agree with  
6 me that in these situations where they occur, drainage  
7 becomes a truly important question?

8 A To drain the ponds?

9 Q To see that there is no,  
10 as the permafrost degrades, that the water is rapidly  
11 removed so that it doesn't pond.

12 A I don't agree with you  
13 that small ponds on the right-of-way are -- have to  
14 be drained right away, or have to be gotten rid of,  
15 no sir.

16 Q Well, let me put it this  
17 way. The development of these small ponds is going to  
18 add to the existing drainage problems, of which we've  
19 heard. There is going to be an accumulation of water  
20 that will add to the normal drainage.

21 A If you're -- I'm not  
22 sure if you're implying, sir, that the amount of water  
23 that's released and fed to the surface is a significant  
24 portion compared to the normal drainage, because if  
25 that's what you're implying, the answer is quite  
26 clearly, "No." It's an insignificant amount that's  
27 going to be thawed and released up to what naturally  
28 has to be drained across the surface or through the active  
29 layer in the earth.

30 Q Well, is there any risk





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that the surface water will collect in the degraded  
3 holes?

4 A Oh yes.

5 Q All right, then doesn't  
6 that add to your drainage problems?

7 A Well, you have to talk  
8 to somebody else about drainage.

9 Q No, but just so I'll have  
10 it clear, if we're going to have subsidance, not in  
11 all places, as Dr. Morgenstern has pointed out, but if  
12 we're going to have subsidance from place to place where  
13 there were ice-rich soils, adjacent to the roadways,  
14 if not the pipeline right-of-way, now what was I going  
15 to ask?

16 (LAUGHTER)

17 A We're even now, sir.

18 Q I don't think so. If  
19 those ponds are going to develop -- and when I say  
20 "ponds" I mean areas of subsidance in which water  
21 collects, isn't that going to create a run-off drainage  
22 problem because the water that comes down the slope or  
23 across the land will gravitate towards those ponds?

24 A Well, it's not --

25 Q In subsidance areas.

26 A Yes, it will, and it will  
27 fill, if the water table is high at that time it will  
28 in fact show as a pond and you'll see it there, but the  
29 point that I'm trying to make is that what you've just  
30 identified is not equated to a major problem, in all  
instances.



1 Q Well, because it doesn't  
2 affect the integrity of the line?

3 A These -- it depends on the  
4 size of the pond. There is no way you can stop these  
5 small ponds from developing, we know that, and there  
6 are just hundreds of them up there and if it does  
7 degrade, it's going to degrade unevenly from place to  
8 place, as you're implying, and you're going to have  
9 small ponds and it's not necessarily going to degrade  
10 the permafrost faster in that area. I guess, if you  
11 want to have an answer what that means with regard  
12 to drainage and erosion, I'm going to have to actually  
13 turn it over to somebody that talks about drainage.

14 Q Well we will be dealing  
15 with drainage and erosion later. I would feel better  
16 if I thought you were going to stock the ponds, but --

17 A I don't think the fish  
18 biologists would go with that sir, because I am sure  
19 they die pretty fast.

20 Q Mr. Williams, are you  
21 continuing your observations with respect to reveget-  
22 ation at any of the test sites?

23 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

24 A Yes sir, every summer the  
25 -- our staff botanists go to Sans Sault at least,  
26 I'm not sure what they do at the other sites, but I  
27 know they have been going there every year.

28 Q And I take it that reports  
29 are made at intervals so we may anticipate a report  
30 on the progress of that in the early autumn?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Assuming were here?

2 A I would expect so, sir. I  
3 think they are included in the biological report  
4 series up to that point in time. They're probably  
5 preparing additional reports on their observations  
6 last summer.

7 Q Well now, you have set out  
8 I think in the application certain observations  
9 about the environmental effects of winter roads, as  
10 you understand them. Are -- have you any conclusions  
11 about the effects of winter roads over the long  
12 term? Or any studies or any reports that deal with  
13 that subject?

14 A Probably a report done in  
15 oh 1970 or '71 by R.M. Hardy and Associates that  
16 -- where they observed a great number of disturbances  
17 in the north and they took survey measurements and  
18 so forth. That's one report.

19 We of course, we --

20 Q I'm trying to zero in,  
21 we've seen some of your reports. I'm trying to zero  
22 in on the test sites. Now at the test sites you had  
23 winter roads. Have you done any work or made any  
24 reports or collected any data of the effects of those  
25 winter roads at the test sites that we can have?

26 A I feel sure that the  
27 botanists included in some of their reports some  
28 observations of that attempted construction of a  
29 winter road at Sans Sault that I illustrated on the  
30 slides. I know for sure that they have done a --





1 they have recently published a report on the surface  
2 vegetation situation at Inuvik following, the summer  
3 following that snow road test at Inuvik.

4 That report, I think, came out  
5 in December of '74.

6 Q Well at the test sites,  
7 have they done any work on winter roads and degradat-  
8 ion?

9 WITNESS MCROBERTS:

10 A There is some studies  
11 reported in a report entitled, I'm paraphrasing the  
12 title, "Geothermal and Meteorological Observations"  
13 at the Sans Sault facility, in which the amount of  
14 thaw in one or two transects crossed a winter roads  
15 is presented.

16 Q Apart from that, is any  
17 currently being done, Dr. Williams, Mr. Williams?

18 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

19 A The botanist will be doing  
20 a -- or will be continuing their observations at Sans  
21 Sault and at Inuvik. I -- and they have studied  
22 other disturbances in the north, they are working  
23 around -- have done some work around Tuk, I'm pretty  
24 sure.

25 Q I take it then, is it fair  
26 to say that whatever else you may be doing at Sans  
27 Sault, you're not following through any studies with  
28 respect to the effect of winter roads and degradation  
29 there, nearby?

30 A Not from an engineering



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 aspect, but I think the botanists do this in their  
2 vegetation study, and I think they record some of  
3 those depths in their studies. I know for sure at  
4 Sans Sault on the active sections, that they have  
5 reported I think over -- at least the first two years  
6 of operation of the test site, the surface -- the  
7 level of the permafrost across the right-of-way, and  
8 have tied it into their various grasses that they  
9 seeded there.

10 Q So if we are going to get  
11 it with respect to Sans Sault, we're going to get it  
12 from a botanist, is that the picture?

13 A Yes, sir.

14 Q Yes.

15 Those are all the questions I  
16 have on this phase, Mr. Commissioner. I'm moving to  
17 a new subject. Is this a convenient time?

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, this  
19 phase of this panel, not --

20 Well we will adjourn til 2:30  
21 then.

22  
23  
24 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO 2:30 P.M.)  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT: Q Dr. Slusarchuk,  
I want to ask you if I have the correct definition of  
a number of terms that may be relevant at a later stage  
of the Inquiry. First of all, do I understand the  
expression, "geothermal regime" to be the temperature  
environment?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: The temperature environment and the heat fluxes associated  
with that, the heat transfer that flows around, yes sir.

Q And do I understand the  
expression, "geothermal analysis" to indicate the  
way in which the changes in the geothermal regime are  
predicted?

A That's reasonable, yes sir.

Q And the "geothermal  
program" to be the technique by which the analysis is  
carried out or carried forward?

A That's our main method,  
our computer program, yes sir.

Q Well now, I take it that  
you have at least two geothermal programs, one identified  
as Battell-Brooker, and identified as the E.P.R.  
program.

A Yes sir.

Q And I understand that  
the function of these programs in layman's terms is  
to tell us a number of things, or to tell you a number  
of things, one is the rate and extent of thaw.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Yes sir.

Q And that obviously relates  
to your ability to predict degradation.

A Yes sir.

Q The second is to predict  
the rate and extent of freezing.

A Yes sir.

Q And that relates directly  
to your ability to predict heave.

A It does that.

Q And that those two func-  
tions are essentially the two functions that the  
geothermal program is designed to achieve.

A Those are the two main  
functions, yes sir.

Q And the program is  
designed to predict the temperature or temperature  
changes at a variety of depths from the soil surface.

A Yes sir.

Q In other words, it's not  
concerned with what is called ambient temperature, it's  
concerned with temperature in the soil.

A It's -- if we're talking  
about predicting, then we're concerned about predicting  
in the soil, but we do use the ambient temperature as  
part of the input to the computer program.

Q It's part of the input  
but it's not part of the outgo, the objective is to  
predict temperatures in the soil.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Absolutely.

Q At various depths.

A Yes sir.

Q And the objective of the program is also to predict those temperatures at various depths at various times in the future.

A Yes sir.

Q And would it be correct to say that in respect of degradation and heave, the geothermal program is an essential component of your ability to respond to these problems?

A It's an integral part of that, of our overall design tools, yes sir.

Q Well now, is it perhaps axiomatic that a program, a computer program or a data program is, in terms of results, only as good as the data, the raw data that is inserted into it?

A Yes sir.

Q And I presume that you would agree that the result of the program, that is the predicted temperature in time and in place, will be extremely sensitive to margins of error with respect to certain kinds of data input.

A Not extremely sensitive, sir, no, it's not.

Q Well, let me put it this way. Margins of error for various kinds of data have been established by the program itself.

A I don't follow that, sir.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q Well, I take it that  
3 there is a wide variety of data that the program  
4 calls for in order to make the predictions that are  
5 sought.

6 A Yes sir.

7 Q And for example, I don't  
8 mean to be exhaustive, the data involves wind velocities  
9 at various places and times.

10 A That's one of the inputs.

11 Q Ambient temperatures at  
12 various places and times.

13 A Yes sir.  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q And a variety of other  
2 kinds of statistical information?

3 A Yes, sir.

4 Q Yes. Well, is it correct  
5 that in collecting the data that is inserted into  
6 the program, either the applicant or the -- or those  
7 who have developed the process, have established  
8 margins of error in respect of the data?

9 A We don't -- we have not  
10 established that, sir, no. Not -- like taking your  
11 term "wind speed", for example, we don't have a number  
12 that says the wind speed is this plus or minus a  
13 certain percent.

14 Q Well let's take two input  
15 data as an example. One of the input data is thermal  
16 conductivity?

17 A Yes, sir.

18 Q Yes. Now, would you  
19 define for us what that data is?

20 A What thermal conductivity  
21 is or what we have obtained our data?

22 Q What thermal conductivity  
23 means?

24 A Thermal conductivity is the  
25 ability to transmit heat through a medium --

26 Q Yes.

27 A -- such as ground.

28 Q Well now, I'm reading from  
29 -- before you get to that, let's take another factor,  
30 the greenhouse factor, and can you describe in, or



1 can you define in straightfoward terms, what is  
2 represented by that factor?

3 A The Greenhouse factor  
4 is defined as the ratio of the long wave radiation  
5 received at ground surface over the long wave radiat-  
6 ion emitted from the ground surface.

7 Q Yes. Well, did that --  
8 just so I'll be sure I understand the mechanism  
9 involved, I take it that heat emanating from the sun  
10 is reflected off the surface of the earth?

11 A That's short wave  
12 radiation sir, not long wave.

13 Q I see. Well, where does  
14 long wave radiation come from?

15 A Right now, sir, everybody  
16 in here and all things are radiating heat, at a  
17 certain temperature.

18 Q All right.

19 A And at lower temperatures  
20 such as we're used to, we emit long wave radiation.

21 Q All right. Well now,  
22 that's the radiation you're concerned with in the  
23 Greenhouse factor?

24 A Yes, sir.

25 Q Yes. And I take it that  
26 the analog to the Greenhouse is a cloud cover?

27 A Yes. The ground surface  
28 is always -- is at a certain temperature, and it is  
29 emitting heat via long wave radiation from that  
30 surface. That's one of the components of the energy



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 balance at the ground surface. Some of this heat  
2 is reflected back or re-radiated back because there  
3 is a -- the clouds themselves are in fact radiating  
4 heat, and it's that ratio of what's come back to what's  
5 going up that is Greenhouse factor.

6 Q And that ratio is measured  
7 and is one of the inputs into the program?

8 A Yes, sir.

9 Q Yes. Well now, I would  
10 like to refer you -- I'll just read the passages,  
11 to the final report on Arctic Gas Thermal Soil  
12 Behaviour Model to Canadian Arctic Gas, dated August  
13 15th, 1974, of Battell and Brooker, and I take it  
14 you're familiar with that report?

15 A Yes sir, I am.

16 Q Well now, on page 2,  
17 Roman II-26, speaking of input data as I understand  
18 it, the authors say with respect to thermal conduct-  
19 ivity, and I will only be dealing with these two  
20 factors, I'm not concerned with the others --

21 MR. MARSHALL: Excuse me, Mr.  
22 Scott, if I may. Are you going to deal with this  
23 report in some detail? If so, I would like to get  
24 a copy for the witness.

25 MR. SCOTT: No, I'm going to  
26 read two sentences, but I'm happy to show him mine,  
27 if that's convenient.

28 Q Relating to thermal con-  
29 ductivity, the authors say:

30 "Thermal conductivity however requires an





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hady, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 accuracy of the order of 20 percent".

2 Now, is that the margin of error that is fixed for  
3 the input data which represents thermal conductivity?

4 A I'm not sure what they're  
5 referring to, why it's fixed at 20 percent there, sir.

6 Q But they are the authors  
7 of the program?

8 A They are the people that  
9 wrote the program, they're not the people that are  
10 using this on this project. We are.

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

Q Would you disagree with  
their statement that thermal conductivity, however,  
requires an accuracy of an order of 20%?

A Yes sir.

Q You would disagree with  
that?

A Yes sir.

Q What kind of accuracy is  
in your judgment required?

A Depends on what I'm trying  
to analyze, sir.

Q Well, let us presume that  
you're trying to analyze temperatures in the soil.

A For freezing or for  
thawing?

Q Well, let's take freezing  
first. What order of accuracy with respect to thermal  
conductivity is required?

A The data that we are  
using in our inputs are geared to that, is the data  
provided by Kirsten and he puts on an accuracy of  
plus or minus 25% on that data.

Q And you are therefore  
inserting thermal conductivity data which relates --  
which is plus or minus 25%?

A Well, that's what Kirsten  
put on his results. We are in fact dealing a whole  
lot closer to the saturated conditions than what Kirsten  
was, when we put that number on for all the data that



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Hardy, Williams  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 he presented. So I think that in most cases we are  
3 probably better than 25%, probably better than 20%,  
4 but it's probably not necessary for us to be that  
5 accurate. However, I think in most cases we are.

6 Q All right. Well, let me  
7 read the sentence again, because there is a comment  
8 at the end of it:

9 Thermal conductivity, however, requires an  
10 accuracy of the order of 20%, which is difficult  
11 to attain."

12 Do you agree that data of an accuracy of that order  
13 would be difficult to attain?

14 A If they're talking about  
15 the complete spectrum of thermal conductivities  
16 for unsaturated soils to dry soils, I would agree with  
17 that. I don't necessarily agree that that would be the  
18 case for the greatest percentage of our situations we  
19 are talking about saturated conditions only.

20 Q Well now, let me come  
21 to the green house factor, and can you tell me with  
22 respect to the green house factor the order of  
23 accuracy that is being utilized in your input? Mr.  
24 Genest looks as if he wants to answer this.

25 MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott, there  
26 is an urgent call for Dr. Morgenstern, and Mr. Commis-  
27 sioner, I wonder if he might be excused for two  
28 minutes?

29 THE COMMISSIONER: Certainly.

30 MR. GENEST: I'm sorry.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A The question was with  
3 regard to the accuracy of the green house factor.

4 MR. SCOTT: The order of  
5 accuracy, what you regard as the limits within which  
6 you must be in order to obtain an appropriate predic-  
7 tion.

8 A Well, again it depends  
9 on what sort of thing we're after, sir. The accuracy  
10 that we require; I'm not aware that we've actually put  
11 an order of value on the accuracy with which we have  
12 the green house factor, I think we use a number --  
13 if you <sup>could</sup> just give me one second --

14 Q Yes.

15 A I think we use a value of  
16 0.83 throughout the year on green house factor, and it  
17 varies by month, and it does vary a little bit by  
18 latitude, but not very much. The numbers that we have,  
19 they vary from a low of .81 to .875.

20 Q Would you be concerned,  
21 for example, if you were -- if your input data with  
22 respect to green house factor was within 10%?

23 A If it was within 10%?

24 Q Yes.

25 A I think 10% would be fine.

26 Q What I really meant to  
27 say was plus or minus 10%.

28 A Well, you're still waiting  
29 for my answer?

30 Q Yes.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A I just don't know how to  
3 answer that right now, sir. We have not as I recall  
4 it, gone through a study that actually shows the values  
5 through which that can vary, other than the numbers  
6 that I've already given you, and that would not quite  
7 be 10%, those numbers that I gave you.

8 Q Yes, well let me just  
9 read you at page II-27, what Battel & Brooker say  
10 with respect to the input of the green house factor:  
11 "This has been shown to be an extremely sensitive  
12 parameter."

13 First of all, would you agree with that?

14 A In some cases it's  
15 sensitive; in other cases it's not very sensitive at  
16 all, sir.

17 Q And I take it "sensitive"  
18 in that context means likely to affect the result.

19 A Yes sir.

20 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott, I  
21 think we're going into a lot of detail in this. I  
22 would like to get the report so the witness can have  
23 it, and he knows the context within which the terms  
24 are being discussed in the report.

25 MR. SCOTT: Yes, well you can  
26 show him this if you want to, but I can read the  
27 sentence first.

28 MR. MARSHALL: Sure.

29 MR. SCOTT:

30 "This has been shown to be an extremely



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

sensitive parameter and accuracy must be  
to within 6%."

I'm prepared to show you your report.

MR. MARSHALL: We didn't bring  
them all down here.

A I've got it upstairs  
in my room, but I didn't realize we were going to be  
talking about it. At the time that this report was  
written, it's dated 1974 --

MR. SCOTT: What month is it?

A August, 1974. That is  
really just an update. The preliminary -- by an  
"update" I mean an editorial update, not an update of  
technical knowledge that went into it, and the -- I  
wish I had my book here that is upstairs, but I think  
this was done at least a couple of years prior to this  
because when I joined N.E.S., in '73, April of '73,  
this was already put out so it must have been sometime  
prior to that, and I think it was based on information  
and knowledge -- technical knowledge -- at late 1972,  
and at that time they had, as their heat flux components  
tied in with the long wave radiation term or the  
green house factor term, a term in the energy flux  
balance at the surface that also contained the evapo  
transpiration term, and so they were varying the one  
number and were actually looking for two components  
of energy at the surface. After I joined we decided  
upon review that that wasn't adequate and we broke up  
the two fluxes. We now have one flux for the long-wave





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 radiation term, where the green house factor comes in,  
3 and it only affects that portion of the flux, and the  
4 evapotranspiration part is quite separate and I would  
5 be very surprised, sir, and -- if they would agree to  
6 this statement at this stage, knowing that we've now  
7 -- well, they know that we've separated it because we  
8 got them to make the change in the program. That's  
9 where I think it was found to be so sensitive in this  
10 report.



1 Q I take it that your pro-  
2 position is that that statement is not the parameter  
3 on which you've been relying?

4 A Well it's one of the many  
5 parameters that we input, but it is not a parameter  
6 that I would call extremely sensitive.

7 Q all right. Well, is the  
8 Greenhouse data that you were -- let me put it more  
9 directly: What is the margin of error that you regard  
10 as acceptable with respect to data input covering the  
11 Greenhouse factor?

12 A We haven't gone through a  
13 detailed analysis like that, sir, because the  
14 combinations and permutations are virtually infinite  
15 if we went through that whole procedure.

16 What we have tried to do is  
17 gather together a body of data that we thought was  
18 the best that we could do, and we did that and that  
19 is reported in our application of geothermal analysis,  
20 and we formulated it, or we -- I'm reaching for the  
21 -- we made specific decisions on which numbers we  
22 would use at what location, because it varies along  
23 the route, for example different -- for example the  
24 temperature does. We looked at the Greenhouse factor,  
25 we saw that it varied with season and it also  
26 varied with latitude, but very little, and what we  
27 did, we put -- we used average values as input to  
28 our computer program.

29 We adopted our standard values  
30 that we thought were the best that we could come up



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 with by discussing with ourselves, with our consult-  
2 ants and with different people in the government,  
3 and also with regard to the published literature that  
4 was available, and then we took that and made compari-  
5 sons with what we were observing in the ground, and  
6 what we understood to happen in the ground from our  
7 own practical experience, and we find that we get  
8 good correlations, so we haven't gone on a -- I think,  
9 I don't know how many input parameters we had, some  
10 10 or 15 or maybe more --

11 Q I'm just talking about two  
12 right now.

13 A Okay, well, on those, other  
14 than what I already told you about the thermal conduct-  
15 ivity, we haven't gone through and said now this  
16 Greenhouse factor has to be at point 83 throughout  
17 the year, plus or minus 15 percent, and if it 's not  
18 that, our predictions are no good.

19 Q Well, let me ask you this,  
20 Dr. Slusarchuk: What in your judgment would be the  
21 effect on the prediction and the ability to predict  
22 correctly if the Greenhouse factor was in error, by  
23 let us say 10 percent?

24 A Well, let me give you a  
25 specific example, because I keep telling you it depends  
26 on what I am analyzing, because we use the geothermal  
27 analysis to analyze a great number of things.

28 Now, for example, if we were  
29 worrying about whether or not the active layer would  
30 go down beneath the bottom of the pipe during its





1 inactive period, and we have ran -- and we were pre-  
2 dicting in some cases that the thaw depth was four  
3 feet or five feet in the bottom of the pipe was eight  
4 or nine feet down, and if we varied the Greenhouse  
5 factor by a little bit, it probably doesn't change  
6 that prediction very much.

7 Q Well, in that example, is  
8 it possible to be more precise? What is the effect  
9 of an error in the Greenhouse factor of 10 percent?  
10 Not with relation to the pipe, I'm just interested in  
11 your predicted value .

12 A Well, the only way I can  
13 be more specific is actually go to an example that  
14 we've measured temperatures and predicted temperatures,  
15 and show you what they are, such as in our report,  
16 for example, on the test facility at Sans.Sault, for  
17 example.

18 Q Well, what I really want  
19 to get, is have you formed any judgment in any given  
20 case, if you want, as to whether an error of 10  
21 percent in the Greenhouse factor is likely to produce  
22 an insignificant error in prediction, a moderate  
23 error or a substantial error?

24 A The judgment that I have  
25 formed, sir, is the number that we use is adequate  
26 for all the purposes that we require it for, and I  
27 haven't gone to that next level to say what level  
28 of inaccuracy of input I put there gives me an -- a  
29 level of inaccuracy in --

30 Q All right, well that's



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1       satisfactory to me, at least.

2                       Now, you have referred to some  
3       changes or updates of the Battell Brooker report. Are  
4       those available?

5                       A       You have the update, sir.  
6       The one that -- the one that you have, I referred to  
7       that as the updated version, but updated mainly from  
8       an editorial point of view, not from a technical  
9       point of view, that the technical essence in that  
10      report --

11                      Q       Well I perhaps didn't --

12                      A       Was subject to --

13                      Q       -- narrow my question  
14      sufficiently. You have told us that at, I take it  
15      at your request, the Brooker people supervised the  
16      division of the Greenhouse factor into two components?

17                      A       It was the Battell people,  
18      sir.

19                      Q       I'm sorry, the Battell  
20      people. Have you got the report by which they com-  
21      mented or determined that division?

22                      A       They didn't supervise it,  
23      sir, they simply carried out an assignment that we  
24      gave to them. We determined in consultation with  
25      them and with -- amongst ourselves, what form we  
26      wanted to have the heat flux component for  
27      evapotranspiration, and when that was decided, what  
28      they then did was simply went and put that extra  
29      -- programmed that extra parameter into the program  
30      itself.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slussarchuk, Morgenster, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Well, have you got in  
2 writing form, the specifications for that program?

3 A For the program?

4 Q For the program -- for the  
5 amendment to the program that was achieved when the  
6 Greenhouse factor was divided?

7 A We've got the equations  
8 on which they are based in this here book here.  
9 It tells you exactly what equation it is, and they've  
10 simply just programmed that into the --  
11 they just added that into the program.

12 In Appendix B of our report on  
13 Applications of Geothermal Analysis by Northern  
14 Engineering Services, dated June, 1974, we have in  
15 there, all the equations that we used for our heat  
16 flux components at the ground surface. The short  
17 wave radiation, the long wave radiation, the convect-  
18 ion and evapotranspiration, and that specific equation  
19 to which I am referring to, is in there as Equation  
20 D-7.

21 Q Well, the difficulty  
22 that confronts me is that the Battell Brooker report,  
23 according to you, and I accept your word, contemplates  
24 a Greenhouse factor that you are not using, and makes  
25 certain comments about desirable levels of accuracy.  
26 You have told me that you are using -- that you have  
27 divided the Greenhouse factor into two parts, and as  
28 I understand it, you're unable to tell me the measure  
29 of accuracy that you judge to be required to obtain  
30 a reasonably accurate result?





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                   A     I've told you I haven't  
2     calculated one, but I have also said, sir, that with  
3     the numbers that we have used, I am satisfied that  
4     they give us reasonable answers.

5                   Q     Well, is there any place  
6     where we can find how you have divided -- into what  
7     two precise components you have divided the Greenhouse  
8     factor, and the level of accuracy that either in  
9     your opinion or in the opinion of the developers of  
10    the program is required to obtain a reasonably  
11    accurate prediction?

12                  A     Well, you can find exactly  
13    the equations that we used for where the Greenhouse  
14    factor is and where the evapotranspiration is in  
15    Appendix B. We have them listed as Equations D-4,  
16    and Equation D-7.  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q Will I be able to read those  
3 and tell the margin of accuracy that the applicant  
4 considers adequate to obtain a reasonably accurate  
5 prediction?

6 A No sir, you won't --

7 Q How do I find that out?

8 A You won't, sir, because  
9 I told you that I haven't calculated that. What you  
10 will find in the other section is the numbers that we  
11 actually used.

12 Q Is it difficult to  
13 calculate it?

14 A There is -- if we went  
15 into a statistical study on it and looked through all  
16 our data and we probably could. You can do all kinds  
17 of things with numbers and statistics, particularly  
18 when you're talking about weather and long lengths of  
19 line and different latitudes and different seasons;  
20 but the point is, sir, that there are a lot of com-  
21 ponents that go into the geothermal analysis.

22 Q I know, I'm just asking  
23 about two at the moment. I think I understand there  
24 are many, and if you can't tell me the level of  
25 accuracy at the moment that you regard as required,  
26 that's the end of the question.

27 A O.K., that is what I  
28 say, sir.

29 Q All right. What you're  
30 telling me is that it can be found by working out the



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
CrossExam by Scott

calculations in Appendix D.

A You can find the exact equations where the green house factors are, and the evapotranspiration which was part of that one input in Appendix D, that is correct.

Q Thank you. Well now, can you tell us with respect to thermal conductivity, the process by which the data is collected?

A For thermal conductivity?

Q For thermal conductivity.

A We searched the literature and extracted from the literature various values for thermal conductivity.

Q Did you make any direct measurements?

A There may have been a very insignificant number of measurements made prior to the time that I joined N.E.S. and some of the component companies, say Arctic Gas or Northwest Projects, I'm not familiar with those. I personally was involved with measuring thermal conductivity when I was with the National Research Council, and I've made a significant number myself.

Q Well, do you evaluate it indirectly then, from the water content? Is that the process?

A We divide thermal -- to get our thermal conductivity based on soil type, in other words we type it as fine-grained soil, coarse-grain soil, or peat or bedrock. And then we further



Clark Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 divide that into what is frozen or unfrozen, and once  
3 we determine that we need to know its density and its  
4 water content; and knowing all that, we then know --we  
5 then have our number for thermal conductivity.

6 Q I take it with that  
7 information you then go to a series of tables.

8 A Yes sir, we do.

9 Q Or graphs?

10 A Yes, and they are in this  
11 book in Appendix B, application of geothermal analysis,  
12 it's all listed right in there.

13 Q Well now, would you tell  
14 us in the same fashion how you determine the data input  
15 for either one or for both of the green house factors,  
16 if I may call them that?

17 A How we obtain --

18 Q Yes.

19 A -- the data?

20 Q Yes.

21 A We got it from the  
22 literature, sir.

23 Q I see. Is there any  
24 actual measurement of that on site at any location?

25 A I think they tried to make  
26 a measurement or two, one or two times at the test-site  
27 at Norman Wells, but the equipment wasn't working  
28 properly at the time -- this is just my recollection --  
29 and again this is prior to my joining, but we have not  
30 been able to, or not had a great body of data to





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 use on the green house factor that we actually measured  
3 ourselves. There may be one or two numbers around for  
4 an isolated location, but we do not have a lot of  
5 numbers measured.

6 Q Well, just so that there  
7 will be no doubt, the concern is that you may not be  
8 able to measure those two components to an acceptable  
9 level of accuracy, and that that will affect the  
10 prediction. Have you anything to say with respect to  
11 that?

12 A I am satisfied that we  
13 can measure them to the -- input them to the accuracy  
14 that we need, sir.

15 Q How do you know that?

16 A Because we've compared  
17 our predictions with measurements that we've had around  
18 the operating test-sites.

19 Q So what you're saying is  
20 that the reason you have confidence and the reason  
21 you know is that you've taken your predictions and  
22 measured them against actual temperatures at various  
23 levels of the ground.

24 A That's the most direct  
25 reason. The other way, sir, is that we know from  
26 experience what different depths you get of active  
27 layer at different times, because we've been up there  
28 and we've dug through the active layer, we've measured  
29 it, we've seen all kinds of temperature measurements  
30 from other people recorded in the literature and are



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 familiar with it ourselves, and that the general trend  
3 of all our results -- of all our analysis is to give  
4 very reasonable results.

5 Q Well, let me ask you  
6 this: What in terms of comparing the prediction that  
7 you make to an actual measurement, what is to you  
8 people the acceptable level for predicting ground  
9 temperatures?

10 A It depends on the  
11 particular case that you're interested in, sir.

12 Q Well, you pick a case  
13 in the Mackenzie Valley, because that's where you're  
14 going to be predicting ground temperatures, and tell  
15 me what your acceptable level is.

16 A If we were designing a  
17 runway --

18 Q No, I think we can come  
19 a little more closely to the facts in this case, a  
20 pipeline.

21 A O.K., a pipeline. What  
22 part of the pipeline do you want me to talk about,  
23 the right-of-way, or right next to the pipeline, or  
24 do you want to be very specific?

25 Q The area where the  
26 pipeline will be placed and the ground immediately  
27 adjacent to it.

28 A Well, once the pipeline  
29 is operating, and the temperatures - well, let's con-  
30 centrate on the 32 degree isotherm, for example, just



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 above the pipe.

3 Q Well, can I stop you  
4 to make sure I understand where we're going? You have  
5 told us that you have this marvellous mechanism, and  
6 I'm sure it is, that predicts ground temperatures and  
7 that that's an important device. Now you've told us  
8 that one of the ways you test that out is by comparing  
9 your predictions to actual measurements.

10 A Yes sir.

11 Q All right. Now what do  
12 you regard -- you can take an example, if you want,  
13 but what do you regard as an acceptable margin of  
14 error before you begin to doubt the process?

15 A Well, for example, we  
16 compared -- we predicted temperatures around one of  
17 the operating test sections at Sans Sault and the  
18 pipe was operating, for example, at a temperature of  
19 five degrees, I believe, for one year, and if we  
20 looked at the temperature two or three inches from  
21 outside the pipe, and that was predicting the tempera-  
22 ture of say plus 20 degrees or plus 30 degrees or  
23 something like that, that would certainly lead us to  
24 doubt; but if it's only a few degrees away from the  
25 temperature of the pipe, that would lead us to believe  
26 that things are working properly there.

27 Q Well, do you want 2  
28 degrees?

29 A 2 degrees? No sir.

30 Q Well, what do you want





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 before you begin to doubt the process?

3 A The temperature -- a  
4 very stringent test of the prediction versus the  
5 comparison, you say what do I predict at level six  
6 feet beneath the surface at day 105 after the year  
7 has started, and for example, we like to be in that  
8 case plus or minus five degrees Fahrenheit, would be  
9 extremely acceptable.

10 Q All right. Well now  
11 is that the level of tolerance in that situation?

12 A That would be acceptable,  
13 yes.

14 Q Now --

15 A Just let me finish.

16 Q I'm sorry.

17 A Now that is if we are  
18 talking about in -- once we know we're in the frozen  
19 soil or once we're in the thawed soil. By and large  
20 it's not of much engineering consequence to us in most  
21 cases to know whether the temperature is 20 degrees or  
22 25 degrees or 26 degrees, that's not of much engineering  
23 consequence to us. In the warm ground it's not of  
24 much engineering consequence for us to know whether  
25 it's 36 degrees or 41 degrees, and that's the plus or  
26 minus five degrees.

27 Q Now --

28 A We also have to put a  
29 -- some sort of an accuracy with regard to the position  
30 of the frost front, or the thaw front, for example.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 In there in most cases we can live with an accuracy of  
3 plus or minus a foot without giving us any engineering  
4 trouble whatsoever.

5 Q Well, I understand that  
6 some of these predictions may not concern you in the  
7 sense that they may have no engineering consequences.  
8 I'm interested at the moment in the ability of the  
9 program to predict accurately, and you've given us one  
10 measure of accuracy of day 105 at six feet. Can you give  
11 us day 105 at let us say one foot? What measure of  
12 accuracy do you require before you begin to doubt  
13 the process there?

14 A Near the ground surface,  
15 sir, we can't predict within plus or minus five degrees  
16 like that.

17 Q Well, what is the accept-  
18 able margin?

19 A Well, I don't really  
20 know what it is because you can really have it vary,  
21 it depends on how the snow comes off or on at any one  
22 location. If, for example, we are predicting the ground  
23 surface temperature in June of 100 degrees and we know  
24 that the air temperature is nowhere near that,  
25 that would give me some doubt. We have found that in  
26 some cases because we input incorrectly. We input at  
27 something in a factor of ten out, every time you look  
28 at your results you apply your judgment to see, are things  
29 working correctly or not, and then -- but if for example  
30 it's predicting the ground temperatures on an average



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 over the month of something, a few degrees away from  
3 what the air temperature is, at that location that  
4 leads you to the conclusion that your process near  
5 the ground surface is working correctly. AT any one  
6 time if you<sup>are</sup> just say two inches beneath the ground  
7 surface, --

8 Q No, I'm saying a foot.

9 A A foot, O.K., even if  
10 a foot you might be out several degrees.  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



1 Q Is it correct then, that  
2 you would not rely on this analysis for determination  
3 of ground temperatures within a foot?

4 A Not --

5 Q Unless your experience  
6 has been that it's too variable?

7 A Not the temperature, sir,  
8 but the -- within the top foot, for example, if we  
9 are on the Arctic coast and toward the end of the  
10 year, the end of the summer, we are predicting, say  
11 half way through the summer, if we are predicting an  
12 active layer in an ordinary soil of a foot, I would  
13 rely on that.

14 Q I asked you, do you have  
15 in front of you Section 8 of the application "Location  
16 Design and Capacity of Facilities"?

17 A What page, sir?

18 Q Date or page?

19 A What page?

20 Q It's the graph on page  
21 8B137?

22 A Which figure?

23 Q At the top.

24 A 8B137 is the section that  
25 there is a figure attached to the other side.

26 Q Figure one? As I read  
27 this, the dotted line is the predicted at this site  
28 and at this location -- and at this time, is that  
29 correct?

30 A Yes, sir, the dotted --





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q And the straight line is  
2 the actual measurement?

3 A Yes, sir.

4 Q Now, beginning with the  
5 left --

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,  
7 Mr. Scott, I'm at 8B13 --

8  
9 MR. SCOTT:

10 Q Now, this is the prediction  
11 that was made at Norman Wells, and the dotted line is  
12 the prediction, the straight line is the actual measure-  
13 ment?

14 A Yes, sir.

15 Q Yes. Now beginning on the  
16 left, can you tell us the error, approximately, at the  
17 freezing point?

18 A Which -- the top graph  
19 or the bottom graph?

20 Q I'm sorry, the top graph.

21 A By asking me to give the  
22 error, I'm assuming that you're -- that you are  
23 assuming that the measured temperatures are spot on  
24 in that we know that it's exactly a one foot beneath  
25 the ground surface, and we are measuring it without  
26 any inaccuracy. Is that your assumption, and you're  
27 asking me to make it?

28 Q As you provided it to us,  
29 I'm prepared to rely on the graph. I have nothing  
30 else to rely on. Is the graph not to be relied on?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                   A     The graph is to be relied  
2 on, but what you have to keep in mind is that you  
3 cannot physically locate a sensor -- you can predict  
4 at one foot, because you can ask the computer to  
5 spit it out at exactly one foot. When you go to  
6 measure it in the field, it's -- it is more difficult  
7 to place your thermister at exactly one foot and  
8 you also have a little bit of inaccuracy with regard  
9 to your read-out temperature measurement equipment.

10                   The only point I'm trying to  
11 make here, sir, before I get into doing what you  
12 told me to do, is that the ground temperatures within  
13 the top foot are as difficult to measure as well,  
14 as well as to predict.

15                   Q     Do I understand you to say  
16 that you may not have been able to measure the  
17 actual temperature at precisely the location that  
18 would make it comparable?

19                   A     That's what I'm saying.  
20 There is a small margin of error in that, and there's  
21 a small margin of error on the read-out, and that  
22 just gives us a physical fact.

23                   Q     A physical fact. All right,  
24 but that margin of error is capable of working both  
25 ways, isn't it? It may reduce your recorded error,  
26 it may increase it?

27                   A     Absolutely.

28                   Q     All right. Well then, we  
29 will allow that to cancel each other out; you  
30 telling me that the error may be less than you think



1 it is, I telling you ah, but on the other hand it's  
2 may be more, and let's just see what --

3 A I wasn't trying to imply  
4 that it was going to be less.

5 Q No.

6 A I was just going to try --  
7 I was just showing that it could be variable.

8 Q All right.

9 A Okay?

10 Q Now, at freezing, what is  
11 the error?

12 A In what, in days?

13 Q At about day 42?

14 A In day 42 --

15 Q It won't be 42, make it  
16 day 50.

17 A At day -- could you give  
18 me a number that is on the straight line there, on  
19 the line?

20 Q I'm sorry. I can't and  
21 make my point effecitvely.

22 A Okay, well let me draw  
23 a --

24 Q You do a --

25 A I will do --

26 Q You seem to be rather  
27  
28 better on the even days of the year than on the  
29 uneven?

30 A Okay, I'll try for 50.





1 At day 50, this is now 50 days  
2 after September the 6th, which makes it -- around the  
3 first of December, something like that.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: Right.  
5 December 1st, 1971, Norman Wells. Am I at the right  
6 place and at the right time?

7 A Yes, you are sir.

8 The measured temperature is  
9 I would guess 21 or 22 degrees, say 21, would you  
10 agree with my estimation of that?

11 MR. SCOTT:

12 Q All right, I just want you  
13 to read it for me.

14 A Okay.

15 Q Tell me what you think it  
16 is.

17 A Fair enough. It's some-  
18 wheres around say 22 degrees, and the top point is  
19 somewheres around 31 degrees, and the difference in  
20 temperature there at that time is 9 degrees.

21 Q And I take it that an  
22 error of that dimension appears for let us say, of  
23 that dimension more or less appears for about a  
24 month?

25 A Yes, more or less. That's  
26 the worst there, that's the maximum and then a month  
27 later it's about 5 or 6 degrees.

28 Q I think I have got a worse  
29 one than that. Let's take day 250.

30 A Yes, sir.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q So it's actually 260 as we  
2 worked it out, what's the error there?

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,  
4 that would be --

5 MR. SCOTT: On the right hand  
6 side --

7 THE COMMISSIONER: -- 260 days  
8 after September the 6th, 1971, so you would be into  
9 the following spring, or even summer, I suppose, from  
10 May or June '72.

11 A Right. The error there  
12 is -- I would estimate at 10 degrees.

13 MR. SCOTT:

14 Q I suggest to you those are  
15 two significant temperature ranges that we've looked  
16 at, aren't they, because they dictate to a certain  
17 extent whether it's melting or freezing? They're  
18 at the crucial point on the thermometer, 32 degrees?

19 A Well, in the one case  
20 they are just below freezing and the other they are  
21 just above freezing.

22 Q Yes, but in terms of pre-  
23 dicting thaw or predicting freezing, that's obviously  
24 about as crucial a moment on the thermometer as you  
25 can get, isn't it?

26 A Only -- yes, for predicting  
27 freeze and thaw, sure.

28 Q And that is where you  
29 appear to have the maximum error in your reading?  
30 As compared to actual measurements?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

A Temperature wise, yes.

Q And predicting temperatures  
is what this is all about?

A We are more interested in  
other, the difference in our predictions of the 32  
degrees isotherm, rather than the difference in the  
temperature.

What you should be after --

Q Well, this is ground  
temperature, isn't it?

A This is ground temperature,  
yeah.

Once the temperatures move away  
from 32 degrees quickly, they hang around 32 degrees  
for quite a while.

Q But isn't this what we  
can --

A Can I tell you in time  
and days, like for example, we started predicting  
thawing virtually at day 30 and we started measuring  
thawing virtually at day 30, and that is of interest.  
At least that shows something with regard to predicting  
when thawing and -- will start, and we also -- we  
predict thawing starting to occur at day 240, and we  
measure it starting to occur at about day 250. Now  
I don't think that's much of a problem. It certainly  
doesn't bother me from any sense at all.

Q Well, that's the point I  
want to get. You're entirely satisfied with this as  
a prediction method?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A For engineering purposes,  
2 absolutely.

3 Q And how about for environ-  
4 mental purposes?

5 A Well, what -- I'm not sure  
6 what you are referring to there, sir.

7 Q We've heard, ad nauseum  
8 from all of us, that thawing and freezing will have  
9 engineering impacts in terms of the construction of  
10 your pipeline. I think it's reasonably apparent that  
11 they will have environmental impacts, the flow from  
12 those temperatures and the construction of the  
13 pipeline, isn't that obvious?

14 A Well, it's obvious in a  
15 very general sense, but to be specific -- but by  
16 missing the thaw, the start of freezing and thaw by  
17 one case one day and the other in ten days, what  
18 environmental problem are you referring to that you  
19 would like me to discuss?

20 Q I don't answer questions.

21 A Well I'm just asking you  
22 to --

23 Q Only Mr. Genest can ask  
24 me questions.

25 A Well, none comes to my  
26 mind.

27 Q Our evidence will be  
28 called in due course, and Mr. Genest will be able to  
29 --

30 THE COMMISSIONER: He wants to





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 make another point, though?

2 A Yes.

3 MR. SCOTT:

4 Q I'm sorry if I interrupted  
5 you.

6 A I was asked about the  
7 environmental implications, and it was -- would  
8 suggest that my answer was probably just directed to  
9 the engineering ones, and with regard to the point  
10 that we've been talking about, no environmental  
11 implications come to my mind, or that I have been  
12 aware of from --

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Nor to Mr.  
14 Scott, apparently.

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

MR. SCOTT:

Q Now, can you tell me  
either precisely or within a time frame when the  
Battell-Brooker or the E.P.R. programs were available  
for reliable application?

A Well, I think they've been  
available for reliable application before I joined  
the group, sir.

Q Well, is there any way  
that you can get for us that date? You joined in '73,  
I take it. When were they available for reliable  
application?

A We can undertake to  
get that, sir. Presumably if you'd talk to the  
people that wrote them, they'd say they'd be reliable  
very quickly. I just very early on, I'm just not  
sure what you mean by "reliable" on that.

Q Well, I understand the  
expression is after they've been "debugged" and are  
available to begin precise prediction, on your project.

A We can undertake to get  
that for you, sir.

Q Is anybody prepared to  
estimate, because there are certain questions that  
follow this? Does anybody know when this process  
began to be utilized?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: The E.P.R.  
program became available to us, I think, in 1971. Now  
what kind of shape it was in at that time I can't  
answer that. But that's about the time the deal was



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

put together with Esso Research.

Q How about Battell-Brooker,  
would that be about the same time?

WITNESS MORGENSTERN: I  
think I can comment. It drew very much on some research  
and  
/development with the University of Alberta, the main  
backbone of the program was conceived and working  
about that time.

Q Yes.

MR. GENEST: Is that good  
enough, Mr. Scott?

MR. SCOTT: Well, to let you  
off the hook, Mr. Genest, I think -- I'd like your  
assurance that those are the dates.

MR. GENEST: All right, we'll  
check that.

MR. SCOTT: And I think we'd  
also like to know from how many test sites did you  
have data for the ground temperatures prior to the  
introduction of the two programs?

WITNESS WILLIAMS: We  
gathered that temperature data around the pipeline at  
Sans Sault in March 1971.

Q Yes. Well, what I'm  
interested in, and perhaps I can make it more clear,  
is when did you begin to collect the recorded temperatures  
the actual temperatures that you then attempted to  
predict?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Well, in





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 the reports of all the test-sites -- the Sans Sault,  
3 the Norman Wells, and the Prudhoe Bay -- it says  
4 exactly in those reports when they started collecting  
5 the data, sir, and we could do no more than just take  
6 those numbers out and give them to you.

7 MR. GENEST: Mr. Commissioner,  
8 I wonder if I might make a suggestion to Mr. Scott?  
9 It may not be welcome, that there is a number of  
10 technical data that perhaps his staff advisors could  
11 confer with ours to find out some of these very detailed  
12 and technical matters which might -- it seems to me  
13 might save a lot of Inquiry time and perhaps satisfy  
14 some of the concerns that obviously Mr. Scott is  
15 transmitting in his cross-examination?

16 MR. SCOTT: I think the point  
17 of this question can be made clear. If we go back to  
18 the diagram to which I referred earlier, that is  
19 figure 1 of 8-B-137, and this applies basically to  
20 all the graphs that are shown, figure 1 at the top  
21 attempts to predict a period of days following September  
22 6th of 1971. What -- is that correct?

23 A Yes sir.

24 Q What I want to know is  
25 first of all, when that data was collected and when  
26 the prediction was made?

27 A I'd have no idea. We'd  
28 have to really search the records to get something  
29 like that. But if that's what you need, we'll make  
30 the attempt.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q Because I am not  
3 suggesting any bad faith at all, but you would be  
4 familiar, Dr. Slusarchuk, with a program into which  
5 you insert quantities of data, some of which has a  
6 variable factor and has to be manipulated as the  
7 program develops. If you already know the figures that  
8 are to be achieved, that is if you already know the  
9 actual figures, there may be a very human tendency  
10 when the predicted figures are produced, to alter the  
11 data put into the process, rather than to conclude  
12 that the process simply doesn't work.

13 A We have taken these  
14 figures right out of reports that were prepared by,  
15 in this case in the Norman Wells test facility,  
16 prepared by Brooker & Battell, in their report, and  
17 I can refer you to that report. There are a great  
18 number of other predictions in there. We just picked  
19 out one to put in there.

20 THE COMMISSIONER:

21 Q The point that is made  
22 is this. Were the actual measurements available  
23 before in fact it was sought to predict? In other  
24 words, was it the prediction made after the fact?  
25 That's what the question is about, isn't it?

26 A I would guess, sir, that  
27 probably it was.

28 MR. SCOTT: Well, to follow  
29 that up I would like to know if you can show us any  
30 prediction that was made prior to the measurement of  
the actual ground temperature changes?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A Well, any temperature  
3 that was predicted prior to the --

4 Q Can you show us a graph  
5 of predictions in which it can be said that the actual  
6 results were not known at the time the prediction was  
7 made?

8 A Yes sir, I can show you  
9 -- not for around the test site but for around thermister  
10 strings in the ground, we can show you a bookful of  
11 those.

12 Q Well, perhaps to save  
13 the time of the INquiry, you can produce whatever graphs  
14 you have that, upon your assertion, predictions were  
15 made in advance of the time -- I mean real predictions,  
16 that is predicting the future.

17 A Yes sir. Well, what we  
18 have done, and I can refer you to the exact one right  
19 now because we have them listed here.

20 Q I predicted the future  
21 when I said I'd only take two or three days, looking  
22 back on it I could now predict that I think I will  
23 be five or six before I'm concluded.

24 MR. GENEST: I don't find that  
25 a helpful observation.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: I wish we  
27 could go back and make his first prediction come true.

28 (LAUGHTER)

29 MR. SCOTT: That's an opportunity  
30 I don't have, you see; the input data are fixed.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A I seem to put my finger  
3 on it, but it doesn't quite meet your two requirements  
4 in that we had the data within N.E.S. and we asked --  
5 the data was there, it was data from 1971 and 1972,  
6 and we had that data in house, and we wanted to see  
7 how well we could predict, and we asked Battells to  
8 take on the assignment of just knowing the bore hole  
9 stratigraphy and from pictures to predict temperatures,  
10 and off they went and they predicted some -- tempera-  
11 tures from some 30 bore holes. Now all you've got is  
12 my word and possibly some correspondence where they  
13 would acknowledge that, and I could dig that out for  
14 you, too.

15 Q I'd be grateful.

16 A That that was the case,  
17 and then we gave them some more, some more holes on  
18 the same basis, and we can give you that information.

19 WITNESS MORGENSTERN: I might  
20 comment on that, Mr. Scott, in my task as reviewer,  
21 of some of the activities of N.E.S. involved in that  
22 and the object of that exercise was indeed to satisfy  
23 skeptics like myself that the predictions could be made  
24 to a reasonable degree of accuracy, so that Battell  
25 were doing it as though the data had not been collected.  
26 They were not privy to the actual measurements.

27 Q Were you satisfied,  
28 Dr. Morgenstern?

29 A Reasonably.  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2  
3 Q You exhibit some  
hesitation there. Is there any or am I mistaken?

4 A Sorry, hesitation about  
5 the reasonableness?

6 Q About the extent of your  
7 satisfaction.

8 A Oh, I am sure that we  
9 can predict the position of the freezing or thawing  
10 front to the engineering needs. We don't predict  
11 temperature fields particularly in thawed soils to a  
12 high degree of accuracy. That's not engineering, and  
13 I think not of environmental consequence.

14 Q Well, just so I'm clear,  
15 do you agree with the observations that Dr. Slusarchuk  
16 has made?

17 A Yes.

18 Q Do you have any hesitation  
19 in adopting his observations respecting the input  
20 data? And the ambiance of error?

21 A Well, if I --

22 Q Well, it's the best I  
23 can do, Mr. Genest, as I've had two long days.  
24 Ambit of error, I think I mean.

25 A I'm less hesitant than  
26 he about some of these things. On average, the energy  
27 balance of the earth's surface has about 20% involved  
28 in long-wave radiation, and a 10% variation in green  
29 house factor would make about a two or 3% variation in  
30 long-wave radiation input, and that would then have a



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 effect  
3 small percentage/on the key thing we're interested  
4 in, which is the position of the freezing front. So  
5 that issue doesn't bother me.

6 The central issue about error  
7 is that the accuracy of our prediction is more accept-  
8 able the further north you go, and, less acceptable  
9 further south, that the reality of the situation is  
10 that we're less in the discontinuous zone than we are  
11 in the continuous zone.  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



1 Q Are you able to hazard --

2 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,  
3 Mr. Scott, I'm sorry. Would you mind repeating what  
4 you just said in the last couple of minutes, Dr.  
5 Morgenstern?

6 A Yes. If I make a hundred  
7 percent error in predicting the depth of the active  
8 layer in the continuous zone further north, since the  
9 active layer is relatively thin, then I'm only pre-  
10 dicting that perhaps a variation of a foot, but that  
11 100 percent error further south is now many feet or  
12 several feet, so that the --

13 Q When you say predicting  
14 the depth, you're speaking of the recession of the  
15 frost front?

16 A Well let me suggest the  
17 following scenario . We come and do some disturbance  
18 along the right- of-way and that changes the energy  
19 balance, and leads to a thickening of the active  
20 layer. A hundred percent error in that prediction  
21 would only be a foot or so, 18 inches in the continuous  
22 zone --

23 Q The depth of the active  
24 layer?

25 A Yes, the thickening of it.  
26 But it would be several feet, perhaps three, four,  
27 five feet in the discontinuous zone.

28 Q Yes.

29 A So that the percentages  
30 might be the same, but the physical implication is





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 more worrisome further south you go.

2 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

3 A Perhaps Mr. Scott, I could  
4 just tell you which references I am referring to. In  
5 our testimony they are references number 148 and 143  
6 --

7 MR. SCOTT:

8 Q When you say in your testi-  
9 mony, do you mean in the book?

10 A Yes sir, in our -- Appendix  
11 B of our canned testimony, it's numbers 148 and numbers  
12 143.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I  
14 think we will take a break for coffee, if that's  
15 all right, Mr. Scott?

16  
17 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)

18  
19 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

20  
21 MR. SCOTT: I've shortened down  
22 some questions I have, and it may be that we can  
23 complete this afternoon in about 10 minutes, if you  
24 please. In order to get the panel and others back  
25 to their places of origin tomorrow, Mr. Genest has  
26 suggested, and I think it's satisfactory unless some  
27 other counsel objects, we should stop at 12, but in  
28 order to do that and not to lose any time, we're  
29 prepared to begin at eight.

30 Does anybody object to that?



a  
1 The press has indicated /modest objection which we  
2 can ignore.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Well --

4 MR. SCOTT: Will that be satis-  
5 factory, sir?

6 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, eight  
7 o'clock.

8 MR. SCOTT:

9 Q Now Dr. Slusarchuk, in  
10 terms of -- you outlined for me the problems connected  
11 with assessing the margin of error for individual input  
12 data into the program. Have you considered -- have  
13 you given any consideration to the acceptable margin  
14 of combined error, in terms of input data?

15 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK:

16 A Well, our -- we don't have  
17 a number like that, sir. We don't have the individual  
18 errors for the individual parameters and we haven't  
19 tried to combine errors to get some kind of statistical  
20 average of error. Our only guiding -- our only guiding  
21 concerns on this is that with numbers that we are  
22 using, are we predicting what we are observing in the  
23 field and when we change these numbers, say from an  
24 ice rich silt to a non-ice rich silt, does it predict  
25 what we understand that has happened from things  
26 that have been reported in the literature and what  
27 we have measured ourselves.

28 Q Do I understand that to  
29 mean that your concern is not focused on the margin  
30 of error of input data, but has rather focused on



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 whether the predictions prove out?

2 A We've -- that is mainly  
3 correct, although we have put quite an effort into  
4 compiling what we felt was a very good set of input  
5 parameters but we did not go to the next step and  
6 put errors attached to each input parameters.

7 Q Well now, at page A2-4 --

8 A Which --

9 Q It's the report that deals  
10 -- the blue covered report. Do you have that?

11 A No sir, I don't.

12 Q Well, let me lend you mine.  
13 You'll see a passage underlined at the bottom of A2-4,  
14 which reads as follows and I quote:

15 "The Greenhouse factor has  
16 been measured and appears relatively cons-  
17 tant".

18 A Yes, sir.

19 Q could you tell me what  
20 you understand by that observation?

21 A It means that the value of  
22 it doesn't fluctuate very much from year -- from  
23 season to season, and from latitude to latitude as  
24 we go along our several hundred miles of pipeline.  
25 That's what it means to me, sir.

26 Q Thank you. Now, I take it  
27 that the -- it's perhaps obvious at this stage that  
28 the geothermal calculations that are obtained by  
29 this process are going to be used in the design of  
30 the pipe, that is to say, in determining its location



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1  
2 from place to place?

3 A It will form one of the  
4 inputs to that design, sir.

5 Q Yes. Are you -- have you  
6 any familiarity with what I understand to be called  
7 the worst likely circumstance concept in determining  
8 input data?

9 A Not in that sense, no,  
10 I can imagine perhaps what it means. I'm not familiar  
11 with that sir, nor with any sort of writings on some-  
12 thing like that.

13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q Do you know whether that  
3 concept has been given any consideration in determining  
4 the input into this program?

5 A That concept hasn't been  
6 used in putting together the input parameters that we  
7 have put together in the applications of geothermal  
8 analysis, sir.

9 Q Well, one question that  
10 a member of one of our attendants has asked me to put,  
11 that is one of the residents, and I think it may have  
12 been dealt with earlier, though I have been unable to  
13 find any reference in the transcript. Assume that  
14 the pipeline crosses an ice wedge at approximately right  
15 angles. The concern expressed is this, that from  
16 time to time a sudden cracking of the ice will be  
17 heard in cold weather at that location. What is that  
18 sound which is attributed to the ice wedge, at least  
19 by the questioner, and what is its effect, if any,  
20 on the pipeline?

21 A I think that somebody  
22 other than myself can answer that.

23 WITNESS McROBERTS: Well,  
24 there are two questions, I guess. The first one is,  
25 "What's the cause of the sound?" My understanding is  
26 that the sound is caused by the ice cracking, as the  
27 ground contracts.

28 The second question relates  
29 to whether or not there is any influence on the buried  
30 pipe, and there is, to my way of thinking, no influence.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 However, I think I should probably explain to you why.  
3 Before I do that, though, I think in order that my  
4 explanation would be understood, I'd have to explain  
5 very briefly how ice wedges form. I think that might  
6 partly explain the noise as well.

7 Dr. McKay, as I under-  
8 stand it, has described the process of formation of  
9 ice wedge features. They are caused by shrinking of  
10 the permafrost as it cools during the winter. In order  
11 to get the crack forming in the ground, you need a  
12 considerable amount of change of temperature, and  
13 a cooling to a very low temperature. That's why in  
14 fact you only find active ice wedge polygons in what  
15 we would call the continuous permafrost zone because  
16 it is relatively much colder than any of the more  
17 southerly or discontinuous permafrost zones.

18 We do find old active -- we  
19 find old ice wedge polygons in the discontinuous  
20 zone, mind you, but they are no longer active.

21 Now the cooling that occurs  
22 is restricted to the upper part of the permafrost, and  
23 the amount of cracking is related to the change in  
24 temperature. For that reason, ice wedges crack more  
25 at the surface where there is more temperature change  
26 and to a lower temperature than they do with depth.  
27 For that reason and exactly for that reason is why  
28 you end up with a wedge.

29 Now in our pipeline we will  
30 -- we are proposing to operate any given section of



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 pipe, say a specific spot in the pipe with time  
3 will be operated at a constant temperature, and that  
4 constant temperature in the pipe maintains the soil  
5 around the pipe, there's a bulb, if you will, not of  
6 frost but of constant temperature. If you can visual-  
7 ize a 4-foot diameter pipe below the pipe extending  
8 for a depth of I would say five to six feet, there  
9 will be no real change in the temperature of the  
10 permafrost whatsoever, and it would be maintained at  
11 the temperature the pipe is operated at. To either  
12 side of the pipe, the temperature is out to a  
13 distance, I would say, of two to four feet It would  
14 not fluctuate say more than about a degree.

15 For that reason then the  
16 pipe itself is maintained, the soil around the pipe  
17 is maintained in a constant temperature condition and  
18 therefore it can't crack. So that while you may be  
19 going through ice wedge polygon terrain that may be  
20 active, the influence of the chilled -- excuse me,  
21 the consequence of the chilled gas pipeline maintain-  
22 ing a constant temperature bulb around the pipe means  
23 that cracking doesn't occur to the pipe. The ground  
24 -- the permafrost terrain away from the pipe will  
25 continue cracking as it normally did, and the soil  
26 immediately around the pipe will not crack any more  
27 because there is no temperature change.

28 Q Assuming this ice  
29 wedge, do I understand you to say that  
30 that situation will not produce any damage to the pipe?





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 A Once the pipe is in  
3 operation there will be no temperature change around  
4 the pipe and therefore no crack.

5 Q Yes, and I take it that  
6 if that phenomena repeats annually, there will still  
7 be no damage.

8 A No, because there will  
9 be no increase -- the ice wedges grow on an incremen-  
10 tal basis up to, studies by Ross McKay and others,  
11 maybe up to an increase in thickness of an eighth of  
12 an inch a year. Now that -- not every year, necessarily  
13 -- that will occur in the permafrost terrain on either  
14 side of the pipeline, but for the permafrost around  
15 the pipeline, it is maintained in a constant temperature  
16 situation and nothing will happen to the pipe because  
17 there is no cracking.

18 Q So you say that if the  
19 -- if after chilling, it happens once or if it happens --  
20 you say that after chilling it will not happen, the  
21 cracking will not occur.

22 A That's correct, yes.  
23 Now there have been some studies done in Alaska on  
24 exactly this problem where a buried pipe<sup>was</sup>/put in the  
25 ground, about 1,000 feet of 40-42-inch line was put  
26 in the ground, the pipe was not in operation, just what  
27 we would call an inactive test facility. The pipe  
28 was put in the ground and there was in fact cracking  
29 that occurred and there was no significant stresses or  
30 strains thrown on the pipe.



1 Q Well, I was going to ask  
2 you what happens in the period of time before the  
3 pipe is chilled, if this phenomena occurs?

4 A Well, as I suggested, we  
5 do have a fairly well documented case record in the  
6 literatures that shows it's of no concern. One also  
7 has to keep in mind that the loading on the pipe,  
8 when the pipe is buried in the ground, generally  
9 speaking the pipe will be in compression when it's in  
10 the ground.

11 Now, you have to -- it's diffi-  
12 cult -- I have to just explain this. When the pipe  
13 is strung together above the -- welded together, this  
14 will be done by and large in cold temperatures,  
15 especially during winter construction in the continuous  
16 permafrost zone, the pipe will be very cold. It  
17 might be the temperature of minus 40, minus 30, and  
18 I'm thinking in degrees Fahrenheit, when the pipe  
19 goes into operation, it would be at a temperature as  
20 low as 10 degrees Fahrenheit or warmer, depending on  
21 the location downstream from the compressor station.

22 Therefore, the pipe itself  
23 would tend to expand in the ground because of this.  
24 It can't because it's fixed, it's a restrained  
25 pipeline, but the strains in the pipe would be in a  
26 compressive sense.

27 During, prior to start up of  
28 the pipe, if an ice wedge cracked, the tendency would  
29 be to instead of putting the pipe in compression, it  
30 would start to put it in tension, but there is a --



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1       apart from the fact that the pipe could take it any-  
2       ways, it's prestressed in the other direction as a  
3       matter of circumstance in relationship to the pheno-  
4       mena we are talking about and the temperatures between  
5       installation and operating conditions.

6                       It's that fact and the studies  
7       that  
8       /were undertaken in Alaska that were, to my way of  
9       thinking, a document to substantiate the fact there  
10      would be no design problems associated with ice  
11      wedge polygon formation.

12                   Q     I take it that you're  
13      aware of the report of Keith J. Anderson and  
14      Associates entitled "Burial of a Cold Pipe in Wet  
15      Permafrost"?

16                   A     No.

17                   Q     Well, in that report, and  
18      I'll have to tender it as an exhibit, though it comes  
19      from my friend's library, the report analyzes the  
20      42 inch pipe which crosses an ice wedge at 45 degrees.  
21      It is assumed that the ice wedge cracks as the ground  
22      contracts with cold temperatures, and the authors  
23      say,

24                               "Since the shear forces  
25      are in the same     order of magnitude as  
26      the shear strength of the pipe while the  
27      displacement is only point 18 inches,  
28      we concluded that the pipe might not  
29      break but would certainly deform. These  
30      forces reported annually would eventually  
      produce progressive failure. Again, no





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 quantitative data was available, but the  
2 results of these calculations indicated  
3 the conservative limits of a potentially  
4 severe problem".

5 A Well I wouldn't agree with  
6 that comment at all. First of all, the amount of  
7 load that could be thrown on the pipe is governed by  
8 the backfill around the pipe. Now, in the worst  
9 conditions that one could conceive of is that the  
10 pipe would be completely surrounded by ice. By and  
11 large, what we would be doing is digging a ditch  
12 and putting the native backfill back into the ditch.  
13 And for the time involved prior to start-up, the  
14 pipe would be held, it would be surrounded by loosely  
15 compacted backfill that may have thawed and refrozen  
16 here and there.

17 And the upper limits, the amount  
18 of load that could be transferred between the contract-  
19 ing soil and the pipe, would in my estimation be no  
20 more than about 60 or 70 pounds per square inch, and  
21 that certainly is nowhere near the limiting capacity  
22 of the pipe.

23 I wouldn't agree with that  
24 report at all. I've never read it, the passage that  
25 you've read to me.

26 Q In the Alaska case do you  
27 know whether the pipe remained intact?

28 A Yes, there's a paper  
29 published by a Professor George Knight of the Insti-  
30 tute of Arctic Environmental Engineering at the





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 University of Alaska. It was published in 1971,  
2 the proceedings of the Symposium on Cold Region  
3 Engineering, put out by the University of Alaska,  
4 and he -- his -- he was measuring the deformation  
5 associated with ice wedge cracking in the pipe, and  
6 he commented on certain levels of strain.

7 My understanding is, and my  
8 input, and this is purely from a geotechnical point  
9 of view in talking to our mechanical stress analysis  
10 people, that the amount of strain that could possibly  
11 be thrown on our pipeline prior to it going in  
12 operation are quite acceptable, and after the pipeline  
13 goes into operation, there is no problem.

14 Q In the Alaska case, do you  
15 know whether there was deformation or not in that  
16 reported case?

17 A Yes, the deformations  
18 that were measured and commented on by Professor  
19 Knight, he -- in one of his conclusions states that  
20 the maximum transducer strain recorded as applicable  
21 to an ice wedge crack, was 270 microinches per inch.

22 Q Well now, what does that  
23 mean? Were there deformations in the pipe, or were  
24 there not?

25 A There was some slight  
26 deformations in the pipe but they were well below the  
27 capacity of the pipe, and I further understand from  
28 discussions that -- one of my colleagues at Northern  
29 Engineering Services has had with people in Alaska  
30 that the state of affairs as reported in 1971



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 to now hasn't changed. There's no adverse loads  
2 thrown on the pipe.

3 Q Is that your view also,  
4 Dr. Morgenstern?

5 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

6 A Yes, sir.

7 Q You adopt what Dr. Mc-  
8 Roberts has said?

9 A Yes.

10 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,  
11 would this be a convenient time?

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes. May  
13 I ask if it is likely that the examination of this  
14 panel will be completed tomorrow if we sit for  
15 four hours tomorrow?

16 MR. SCOTT: It's unlikely.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, there's  
18 not much we can do about it, I suppose.

19 Well, we will adjourn then  
20 until 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.

21  
22 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO 8:00 A.M., FRIDAY,  
23 APRIL 11TH, 1975)  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

347

M835

Vol. XXVII

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:

Vol. XXVII

10 April 1975

347

M835

Vol. XXVII









CA1  
Z 1  
74M21

TOR. LIBRARY

Government  
Publications

# MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF AN APPLICATION BY CANADIAN ARCTIC  
GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT  
BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON  
TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES FOR THE  
PURPOSE OF THE PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND  
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,  
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE  
PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 11, 1975.

---

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

---

VOLUME XXVIII

CANADIAN ARCTIC  
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 16 1975

LIBRARY



APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.	
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,	
Mr. Alick Ryder and	
Mr. Ian Roland	for Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry;
Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.	
Mr. Jack Marshall,	
Mr. Darryl Carter and	
Mr. John Steeves	for Canadian Arctic Gas Pipeline Limited;
Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.	
Mr. Alan Hollingworth	for Foothills Pipelines Ltd.;
Mr. Russell Anthony, and	
Prof. Alastair Lucas	for Canadian Arctic Resources Committee;
Mr. Glen W. Bell and	
Mr. Gerry Sutton	For Northwest Territories Indian Brotherhood and Metis Association of the Northwest Territories;
Miss Lesley Lane	for Inuit Tapirisat of Canada and The Committee for Original Peoples' Entitlement;
Mr. Ron Veale and	
Mr. Allen Lueck,	for Council for Yukon Indians
Mr. Carson H. Templeton,	for Environmental Pro- tection Board;
Mr. David Reesor,	for Northwest Territories Association of Muni- cipalities;
Mr. Murray Sigler,	for Northwest Territories Chamber of Commerce.

347  
14835  
Vol. XXVIII

CANADIAN ARCTIC  
GAS STUDY LTD.

APR 16 1975

LIBRARY



I N D E X

Page

WITNESSES FOR APPLICANT:

John Ivor CLARK

Garry Wood HOLLINGSHEAD

Edward Charles McROBERTS

William Alexander SLUSARCHUK

Norman Reuben MORGENSTERN

Richard H. COOPER

R.H.HARDY

Guy Leslie WILLIAMS

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Scott (cont) 3436





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott  
Yellowknife, N.W.T.

April 11, 1975.

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR SCOTT: Good morning. Mr.  
Bell isn't here yet but I presume we can proceed in  
his absence.

JOHN IVOR CLARK  
GARRY WOOD HOLLINGSHEAD  
EDWARD CHARLES McROBERTS  
WILLIAM ALEXANDER SLUSARCHUK  
NORMAN REUBEN MORGENSTERN  
RICHARD H. COOPER  
R.M. HARDY  
GUY LESLIE WILLIAMS, resumed:

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. SCOTT (CONTINUED):

Q Dr. Cooper, I'd like  
to ask some questions dealing with the general question  
of northern rivers, and we mean by this principally  
rivers on the North Slope. I take it it's your  
position as stated on page 2633 of the transcript of  
March 20th that there is virtually zero flow, that's  
your phrase in quotations, "virtually zero flow in  
the rivers of the Yukon North Slope during the winter."

WITNESS COOPER: We have done  
some work in attempting to measure flow or find flow,  
and there is very little flow beneath the ice. So  
shall I say it's very, very low.

Q Well, it's virtually  
zero, isn't it?

A Yes.

Q Dr. Clark, on page 2633  
of the transcript -- I'm sorry, Dr. Clark, on page  
2623 of the transcript, Volume 22, you were asked





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 this question by Mr. Anthony and gave this answer.

3 Let me read it to you:

4 "Q And we have discussed in the evidence  
5 before this Inquiry about flow characteristics  
6 of such rivers as the Malcolm River, for  
7 example, on the North Slope of the Yukon.  
8 Now I believe that as a result of those  
9 discussions I'm accurate in saying that in  
10 those rivers, for example, or in that  
11 river, for example, dealing with it as an  
12 example, that in winter often it is freezing  
13 right throughout at certain portions through  
14 the whole depth of the river.

15 A I would think that in certain braided  
16 portions that would be the case, yes."

17 Now that was your question and answer. Would you  
18 agree with me that the phrase "in certain braided  
19 portions" that you used includes probably something  
20 between 90 to 100% in the rivers in the vicinity of  
21 your crossings?

22 WITNESS CLARK: I'm not  
23 clear what you're asking me to agree with.

24 Q In your answer you said  
25 that in the winter freeze on the North Slope in river  
26 beds extended throughout the whole depth of the river  
27 in certain braided portions. I accept that answer,  
28 I have nothing to quarrel with in it. What I would  
29 like to know is, would it be fair to say that 90%  
30 to 100% almost of the rivers where you cross are at



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 the braided portion?

3 A Yes.

4 Q And that they are there-  
5 fore frozen, as your answer indicated.

6 A Yes. My answer, what  
7 I meant by "braided portions" there was that there  
8 could be some braids, if you like, that could be  
9 carrying water.

10 Q But that would be  
11 relatively unusual in terms of numbers of braids during  
12 the winter.

13 A I believe it would be  
14 unusual, yes.

15 Q And that same observation,  
16 I take it, would apply to almost all rivers and small  
17 streams on the Yukon North Slope.

18 A Yes.

19 Q Well, Dr. Clark or  
20 Dr. Cooper, would you agree that there is likely to  
21 be permafrost at some depth under most rivers of the  
22 Yukon North Slope?

23 A Yes.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Permafrost  
25 at some depth, or to some depth?

26 A It would be at some  
27 depth, sir. I think I gave an example earlier that  
28 for a 200-foot wide stream, I would expect to hit  
29 permafrost 40 to 60 feet below the bed.

30 MR. SCOTT:

Q I thought that was the



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

position and I'm somewhat mystified by the statement  
in the canned evidence at page 4, the second paragraph,  
it may simply be a misprint.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Do you see it? The  
2 second sentence it says,

3 "Because of the freezing  
4 temperatures of the water, however, perma-  
5 frost does not exist beneath the beds of  
6 the larger rivers, even along the Arctic  
7 coast."

8 A That's correct.

9 Q Yes, well what river -- is  
10 that not inconsistent with the other answer?

11 A Not entirely, the permafrost  
12 does  
13 would -- for instance / not exist at certain  
14 channels of the Mackenzie River.

15 Q Well that isn't what I  
16 understood to mean the Arctic coast, obviously it  
17 flows into the Arctic coast. Are there other rivers  
18 apart from the Mackenzie in which in your judgment  
19 there is no permafrost on the north slope?

20 A We haven't drilled any of  
21 the river beds along the Arctic coast. I'm sure  
22 you are thinking of the Yukon and Alaska.

23 Q Well let me ask you this:  
24 Apart from the Mackenzie with which we've dealt,  
25 I think in another context, would it be a prudent  
26 assumption that there is permafrost at some depth  
27 below the beds of all other rivers that flow into the  
28 Arctic in the area with which we're concerned?

29 A At some depth, yes.

30 Q Well I've got a slide show.  
It's a very amateur drawing, not as amateur as the



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1  
2 focus makes it appear, and I would just like to understand  
3 if I can, the mechanics if that is the phrase that  
4 applies to the operation of North Slope rivers of the  
5 type I have been discussing. Now you see on the diagram,  
6 Dr. Cooper, Dr. Hollingshead, ignore A 7 & B for the  
7 moment, that a small river bed is shown both in June  
8 and in March.

9 Now, the diagram for June  
10 shows water in the channel permafrost line and with  
11 the pipe passing through. I take it that is a fair  
12 representation of a typical situation at that time of  
13 year?

14 WITNESS COOPER:

15 A Yes, I think so. That just  
16 shows a single channel rather than the braided nature,  
17 for conceptual purposes, yes.

18 Q Now, the second diagram shows  
19 the river, let us say in March, and you have told us  
20 that the river has either dried up or frozen, and that  
21 would be typical for a channel of that type would it not?

22 A Yes, I think so. Can I  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 ask a question?

2 Q Yes.

3 A You mean so you've got  
4 a limit of frost, you have essentially a frozen  
5 window or a thawed window in there now.

6 Q I'm sorry, Dr. Cooper, I  
7 didn't get your answer.

8 A Well, I think -- could you  
9 explain on the March one, which portions are thawed  
10 and which portions are frozen?

11 Q Well first of all, on the  
12 March one, I'm looking at the river bed, and I under-  
13 stand that it would be either dried and full of snow  
14 and ice, or frozen -- almost to the bottom?

15 A Yes, and to a depth of  
16 possibly a few feet.

17 Q Below the river bed?

18 A Right.

19 Q Yes. And that the red  
20 dotted lines below the pipe and immediately above the  
21 pipe, show a frozen area that would typically exist?

22 A Well, they show a boundary  
23 between a frozen and a thawed area.

24 Q Yes. Well, I take it  
25 what you're saying to me is that the permafrost line  
26 remains as it did in the previous diagram?

27 A That's correct, and just  
28 above your finger would be thawed.

29 Q Yes --

30 A Above and to the left of



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 your finger.

2 Q And there is a frozen area  
3 around the pipe?

4 A Yes.

5 Q Yes. Well now, this is  
6 designed to show the same river in I think it's  
7 called longitudinal section, would that be correct?

8 A Yes, sir.

9 Q Yes. And does that dis-  
10 close the same thing? The dotted line or the hatched  
11 line at the top in the June diagram represents the  
12 river bed, and above it is whatever water is in the  
13 river at June?

14 A That's correct.

15 Q Yes. Below that is the  
16 ground that is the river bed and the soils below  
17 it --

18 A That's correct.

19 Q -- in which the pipe is  
20 placed? And around the pipe with the red dotted  
21 line, but above the permafrost line is the frost  
22 bulb?

23 A That's correct.

24 Q And on the left there is  
25 a designation ground water, and I take it/is typical  
26 that ground water will percolate through the soils  
27 below the river bed?

28 A That's correct.

29 Q Yes. And that would be a  
30 typical situation in this kind of river looked at in





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1       that section in June?

2                   A       That's correct, yes.

3                   Q       Now, can we come to March.

4       I take it as we have there a longitudinal section and I  
5       take it that above the river bed and probably conti-  
6       guous with it will be snow and/or ice in some mass?

7                   A       Thats correct.

8                   Q       Yes. Again, we have the  
9       top limit of frost which is frost that is coming down  
10      from the snow or ice in the river bed, which is the  
11      top red dotted line, would that be correct?

12                  A       Correct.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q Then in unfrozen soils  
3 we have the pipe with its frost bulb.

4 A Correct.

5 Q And below that the  
6 permafrost line.

7 A Yes. Could I just  
8 add something at this point?

9 Q Yes.

10 A The distance below the  
11 bottom of the frost bulb and the permafrost line  
12 appears on your sketch to be very minimal. Now we  
13 don't know in all instances where the permafrost table  
14 will be, and of course that will be relatively constant.  
15 However, I'd also like to point out that we are  
16 recognizing that in some instances we will have shallow  
17 bedrock and a relatively shallow aquafer, which would  
18 essentially give the same effect that you're talking  
19 about, and we're recognizing that problem of possibly  
20 confining that aquafer.

21 MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott, it  
22 says "limit" at the bottom right-hand corner. There  
23 seems to be a squiggle or dot. Is that seasonal?

24 MR. SCOTT: It should be  
25 "limit of seasonal frost". I think that's an "S"  
26 with some little symbol indicating the balance of the  
27 letters.

28 Q Now, I'd like to refer  
29 you to the applicant's reply to question 38 posed by  
30 the Assessment Group. It's page 38-5, do you have



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that, Dr. Hollingshead? Or 38-5 is the portion of  
3 the reply that I want to deal with.

4 Now, do I understand correctly  
5 that this reply to question 38 is based on the  
6 Battell Report of October, 1974?

7 A I  
8 think Dr. Clark can better respond to that.

9 WITNESS CLARK: That's my  
10 understanding, yes.

11 Q And that the last one  
12 of the problems that are dealt with in that answer,  
13 that is 3.3 at page 38-5 -- do you see that?

14 A Yes.

15 Q That that last of the  
16 pipe below river problems that is dealt with in the  
17 response, the one that deals with rivers that freeze  
18 to the bottom is the relevant answer for virtually  
19 all small and intermediate crossings.

20 A I'd have to re-read  
21 that.

22 Q Well, Dr. Cooper, have  
23 you had an opportunity to look at it?

24 WITNESS COOPER: I am just  
25 reading it right now, sir.

26 MR. GENEST: Mr. Scott,  
27 you mean it is an relevant answer for all streams  
28 that freeze to the river bed?

29 MR. SCOTT: Yes.

30 A I think we could state





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that that type of river is typical of braided rivers  
3 that we're crossing, I don't think there's any dispute  
4 there.

5 Q Do you agree, Dr. Clark,  
6 or do you -- have you not finished reading?

7 WITNESS CLARK: I was reading  
8 while Dr. Cooper was making his comment. I didn't  
9 hear what he said. If you're asking is this  
10 typical of North Slope small streams, yes.

11 Q Is this the answer that  
12 will apply to, if not all, almost all the streams and  
13 channels that enter on the North Shore, or that exit  
14 on the North Shore?

15 A That they would freeze  
16 to the river bottom, yes.

17 Q Yes, and this answer  
18 applies with respect to that problem.

19 A Yes, it does.

20 Q Now is it correct that  
21 the computational results of the Battell Report depend  
22 on the type of materials that existed under the river?

23 WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: Yes sir.

24 Q And I take it it's  
25 also correct, reading the Battell Report, that they  
26 had to make assumptions about the soil conditions,  
27 about the type of materials below the river because  
28 there was no drill hole data for most of those rivers.

29 A This is correct, sir.  
30 When we were doing these analyses with Battell, we



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 did not have drill hole data and we did make assumptions  
3 with regard to permeability of the soil, and we varied  
4 it from fine-grained material to coarse-grained  
5 material.

6 Q And isn't it correct to  
7 say that in their report, Battell also had to make  
8 other assumptions or achieve simplifications of their  
9 definition of the problem in order to prepare a  
10 response to it?

11 A They were some of the  
12 assumptions. The other major ones with regard to flow  
13 would be the slope, and that was not an assumption.  
14 We had measured data on the bed of the slope that we  
15 input into that.

16 Q Yes, but I take it for  
17 example in order to respond to the problem with the  
18 knowledge they had, they -- and I think they perhaps  
19 conceded this -- they ignored the pressure rise which  
20 would occur upstream of the growing frost bulb.

21 A In this case, yes sir.

22 Q Yes, and as a consequence  
23 in developing a model to which they could respond or  
24 which they could analyze --

25 A Excuse me, sir.

26 Q Yes.

27 A I was incorrect. That  
28 was not -- we did not ignore the pressure completely.  
29 We didn't consider it a confined aquafer, and from  
30 that point of view we ignored the pressure; but we did



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 take into account the pressure difference at where  
3 the water was flowing past the bulb, and that as the  
4 bulb -- the frost bulb enlarged and started to close  
5 off more and more of the aquifer, we reduced the rate  
6 of flow accordingly, according to pressure loss, but  
7 not according to a confined -- not assuming that the  
8 top was frozen. We assumed that the water table could  
9 just go up to the ground surface.

10 Q Well, I make no criticism  
11 of it, but would it not be correct to say that the  
12 Battell computational results are a speculation based  
13 on a model and on a variety of assumptions?

14 A It's our -- I don't  
15 think "speculation" is a fair word, sir. We -- Battell  
16 actually just carried out the analysis. We were the  
17 ones that laid down the various input parameters that  
18 we wanted run. They developed the convective portion  
19 of the model and ran through the mechanics of putting  
20 the numbers in and coming out with a solution. But  
21 it's not speculative in the sense that we just put  
22 any numbers in. We put in very rational numbers.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q When I said speculative,  
2 I was perhaps unfair, I didn't mean to suggest  
3 absolutely random, which I think is the point you're  
4 making, but it was a judgment based on a model based  
5 in part on some necessary assumptions?

6 A Yes, sir.

7 Q Yes. And I put it to you  
8 that therefore it can -- the conclusions of Battell  
9 can really only be accepted as fact after they have  
10 been tested in the field?

11 A We don't have any field  
12 evidence or field data that would con-  
13 firm the results that we've got here. That is  
14 correct, sir.

15 Q Well I take it that as  
16 we were saying yesterday, that when you took Battell's  
17 geothermal analysis, you were able in the way you  
18 described yesterday, to effect some tests in the  
19 field to ascertain the accuracy of their analysis with  
20 respect to the geothermal problem?

21 A Yes, sir.

22 Q I take it that you would  
23 want to do the same with respect to their analysis  
24 about these rivers, if it were possible?

25 A Yes. We did make a couple  
26 of tests to make sure that the computer program that  
27 was developed was working correctly. We compared that  
28 and this is given in that report. We compared it with  
29 a close form solution for a convective model of water  
30 flowing through soil to check whether the model was





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 handling the convective component correctly, and it  
2 was. So this gave us confidence that the convective  
3 model was -- computer model was working correctly.

4 Q Yes. Is there -- and we  
5 have been unable to find any, is there any report or  
6 analysis of that test?

7 A It's in the Appendix of  
8 that report that you're referring to, the Battell  
9 report, sir. At least to the best of my knowledge  
10 it's in there. I'm sure it must be.

11 Q Well I take it that gener-  
12 ally speaking with Battell, you have attempted to test  
13 and, as you indicated yesterday, their results  
14 in the field, where possible?

15 A Yes, sir.

16 Q Has it been possible to do  
17 any of that field test with respect to Battell's  
18 results related to this problem?

19 A No, sir.

20 Q No. And I take it that  
21 you have no plan for a sort of a test river crossing  
22 on the north slope?

23 A Not right at the moment,  
24 sir, no sir.

25 Q Is any plan in the works  
26 for such a test river crossing?

27 A No, sir.

28 Q Now Dr. Cooper, in a report  
29 made by T/ Blench and Associates Limited, called  
30 "Breakup Observations on Northern Rivers of 1973",



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 made in June, 1973, there is a statement I wish to  
2 read to you. You're familiar generally with that  
3 report, are you?

4 WITNESS COOPER:

5 A Yes, it's been some con-  
6 siderable time since I've reviewed it.

7 Q Yes. And it was made by  
8 Mr. Nuttall of your firm?

9 A That's correct.

10 Q On page 20 of that report,  
11 under a heading "Discussion of Aufeis Observations",  
12 A-u-f-e-i-s, Mr. Nuttall says, and I quote:

13 "Growth of the frost bulb  
14 around the pipe in an unfrozen aquifer  
15 could conceivably restrict seepage flow  
16 and build up damaging pressures".

17 Do you agree with that observation?

18 A Damaging pressures, I  
19 believe Mr. Nuttall refers to as pressures that would  
20 cause surfacing of the water, and addition to the  
21 icing. Not damaging -- he doesn't mean it as damaging  
22 pressures to the pipeline.

23 Q With that qualification,  
24 do you accept the rest of his statement?

25 A Yes, if the permafrost  
26 configuration was such that the constriction of the  
27 ground water did occur, yes.

28 Q You've said that the  
29 qualification you add is that it is damaging if the  
30 -- if it rises above the water bed. What's damaging



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 about that?

2 A Well that's my qualification,  
3 I don't think I would use the word "damaging". I  
4 think I would use the word that excess pressures would  
5 be built up, or the wording that excess pressures  
6 would be built up, and this would cause a surfacing  
7 of the water.

8 Q Is there any -- assuming  
9 the pressures build up in the way that Mr. Nuttall  
10 has described, can/<sup>any</sup>damage result from that, to either  
11 the pipe or the environment?

12 A No, I don't believe so.

13 Q What is the consequence of  
14 the build-up of those pressures?

15 A Well I'd like to also  
16 point out that we have proposed a solution to alleviate  
17 those pressures and pass water through.

18 Q That's the hole in the  
19 pipe that --

20 A The insulated pipe, yes.

21 Q We'll come to that in a  
22 moment, and obviously if you have a solution there  
23 aren't going to be any pressures and there isn't,  
24 to use Mr. Nuttall's phrase, as qualified by you, going  
25 to be any damage if all that works. But if that  
26 solution were not devised, what is the damage that  
27 would result from these pressures, or is there any?

28 A Well, what would result  
29 is you would get water surfacing upstream of the  
30 pipeline, which is the mechanism by which these





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 icings develop naturally.

2 Now, the presence of the  
3 constriction due to the frozen pipeline, would be to  
4 cause the icing to grow upstream.

5 Q Well now, Mr. Nuttall  
6 goes on, and perhaps I should read the whole para-  
7 graph, so you'll have it. It reads as follows:

8 "Growth of the frost bulb  
9 around the pipe in an unfrozen aquifer  
10 could conceivably restrict seepage flow  
11 and build up damaging pressures. This  
12 problem has to be studied by means of  
13 drill holes and temperature observations  
14 wherever sub-soil seepage occurs. Aufeis  
15 deposits on or downstream of the route  
16 marked possible sub-soil seepage". .

17 Would you agree with that observation, bearing in  
18 mind the qualification you've attached to the word  
19 damage?  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Well yes, of course.

WE would be investigating the crossings to determine  
the thickness of the aquifer by bore holes.

Q Well now just so we'll  
be clear, the problem we're talking about, I take it,  
is -- relates to the ground water.

A Yes sir.

Q And what is happening is  
that the ground water would, in the absence of the  
pipe, would percolate along here, in due course com-  
ing to the surface at various places.

A Yes, and causing  
icings naturally.

Q Yes, and that what has  
happened is that between the -- in the winter, in the  
March example, between the level of frost below the  
river bed and the permafrost, the pipe has been  
inserted.

A Yes, in cases where  
the permafrost is that shallow, that would happen.

Q Yes, and around the  
pipe has grown a frost bulb.

A That is correct.

Q And the result of that  
may be if the dimensions are right, that the Templeton  
Wall, which is the frost bulb, insofar as it extends  
between the frost line below the river bed and the  
permafrost line, may block off that ability to see.

A Only in those cases



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 where we consider it not necessary to put the cross-  
3 drainage in.

4 Q Yes. I'm just trying to  
5 analyze the mechanics of the problem and then we'll  
6 come to the solution; but the problem is that the  
7 Templeton Wall may effectively prevent the seepage  
8 in certain cases.

9 A Yes sir.

10 Q And I take it that  
11 then you do agree with what Mr. Nuttall has said, that  
12 the problem has to be studied by means of drill holes.

13 WITNESS CLARK: A If I could add a comment,  
14 sir?

15 Q Yes, certainly.

16 A Our proposal is not to  
17 restrict ourselves to bore holes in studying that  
18 problem.

19 Q What other solutions are  
20 contemplated in order to study the problem?

21 A We're contemplating a  
22 geophysical survey there as well.

23 Q Well --

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Contemplat-  
25 ing what?

26 A A geophysical survey.

27 MR. SCOTT: In this context  
28 then with relation to those rivers, what is a geo-  
29 physical survey?

30 A It could be resistivity



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 or it would likely include resistivity surveys.. It  
3 could also use shallow seismic surveys.

4 Q What is the first kind  
5 of survey?

6 A It's a survey that's a  
7 very common technique that employs an electrical  
8 device where a current is passed in effect through  
9 the earth.

10 Q Is this in effect shallow  
11 seismic blasting in the river?

12 A Oh no, it's -- there is  
13 no blasting at all associated with either of the  
14 techniques that I've described.

15 Q So I take it then that  
16 you have that potential technique, you have the  
17 technique of soundings.

18 A Yes.

19 Q Will soundings help you  
20 tell where the permafrost is?

21 A Not soundings, no.

22 Q Will the first help you  
23 tell where the permafrost is?

24 A The geophysical survey?

25 Q Yes.

26 A Yes, it will.

27 Q And then you have the  
28 possibility of drill holes.

29 A Yes sir.

30 Q And I take it that those





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 techniques are designed to give you in every concrete  
3 case where it's required the kind of dimensions that  
4 are shown in the two diagrams I've put before you.

5 A That's our expectation,  
6 combined of course with reconnaissance, the types of  
7 observations that will be made over this year and  
8 other years by others as well as ourselves.

9 Q Well now, I take it,  
10 Dr. Clark, that the problem that we have been analyzing  
11 is not limited to minor river crossings, but also  
12 applies to the Malcolm and Firth Rivers.

13 A Indeed it does, yes.

14 Q Yes, and I take it that  
15 on page 14 of the -- of your canned evidence, the  
16 addendum, actually, --

17 A Page 14 of the addendum?

18 Q Yes, it's a response to  
19 one of the Assessment Group's questions, you say in  
20 the first sentence:

21 "It is agreed that operation of the chilled  
22 pipeline by itself could induce new icings at  
23 some minor river crossings."

24 I take it that that -- the effect of that when under-  
25 stood is to include the Malcolm and Firth Rivers.

26 A It could induce some  
27 icings, yes.

28 Q And with the exception  
29 of the Mackenzie leading into the Arctic, it's a  
30 problem that applies basically to all the rivers,



Clark, Hillingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 exiting on the North Shore.

3 A All the gravel bed rivers,  
4 yes, where there is winter flow in the bed.

5 Q And minor is only a  
6 comparative term in this context, as compared to the  
7 Mackenzie.

8 A We have a classification  
9 of major and minor river crossings that actually relates  
10 to the manner in which they are built. Usually a  
11 major river crossing is one that is handled by a  
12 separate contractor; a minor river crossing is one  
13 that is handled by the contractor dealing with that  
14 particular spread.

15 Q Well, that's where my  
16 trouble has come, this definition "minor" and "major"  
17 is a contractual definition.

18 A It's a piece of jargon  
19 that we use in the context that I just described, yes.

20 Q But it would be agreed  
21 that this problem is a potential problem for all the  
22 rivers that exit on the North Shore, <sup>including</sup> the Malcolm and  
23 the Firth.

24 A When we say "minor"  
25 in the context that I've just described, we don't mean  
26 insignificant. They are very significant rivers.

27 Q Dr. Cooper, would you  
28 agree that the appearance of icings in a stream channel  
29 downstream of a proposed pipeline crossing tends to  
30 indicate that there could be a ground water flow in



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

the stream at the crossing?

WITNESS COOPER: Either a ground water flow in the stream at the crossing, or the presence of some springs in the banks or in the valley, so to speak, downstream of the crossing, either one of those causes could be responsible.

Q And that in fact there are a significant number of icings downstream of the proposed pipeline crossings, both along the Yukon coast and in the vicinity -- in the valley of Norman Wells.

A I couldn't give a firm answer on that, in that most of our work on identifying icings has been concentrated on the interior route in the Canning River. There has been work on-going this winter that will give more definite answers to it.

WITNESS CLARK: I can answer that, the answer is , yes.

Q Both with respect to the Yukon coast and Norman Wells?

A Yes.

Q And that in all these streams, fish tend to over-winter in the patches of open water that are associated with or adjacent to the icings.

A I can't give a definite answer to that, but our fish biologist has identified for us the areas now where they suspect over-wintering





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

fish.

Q Yes, but Dr. Clark --

A It certainly is not  
all.

Q -- no, but wouldn't you  
agree that your fish biologist has indicated to you  
that the patches of open water associated with these  
icings are a natural place for fish, and I think par-  
ticularly char, to over-winter?

A Yes.

Q It doesn't mean that  
every patch of water is going to have over-wintering  
fish, but I take it that every patch is a potential  
over-wintering place for fish.

A I think that's correct.

WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: I think  
I might add, Mr. Scott, that there are not patches  
of open water associated with every icing, as you  
suggest.

Q No, I didn't mean to  
suggest that, but what I'm trying to -- the point I'm  
trying to make is that where those patches of water  
occur in the winter, they are frequently associated  
with icings.

WITNESS CLARK: A I would think that there  
would have to be a repeated occurrence. If for instance  
there was open water in a location this year and it  
was frozen to the bottom next year, and so on, that  
it's likely that the fish would adapt naturally to



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that particular environment and not select that  
3 particular area that might be open this year.

4 Q So what are you telling  
5 me, on the basis of your understanding that the fish  
6 to that extent are a creature of habit, they go to  
7 the open water areas they've gone to before?

8 A I would think that would  
9 be the case, yes.

10 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: If I  
11 might add just a word, Mr. Scott. The potential over-  
12 - fish over-wintering areas which have been suggested  
13 by the fish biologist are primarily associated with  
14 the warmer water springs and there are comparatively  
15 few of these potential areas. They are certainly  
16 not associated with all of the minor stream crossings  
17 along the --

18 Q Well, the fewer there  
19 are, I take it, we can say the more important they  
20 are.

21 WITNESS CLARK: I don't think  
22 we're qualified to answer that, Mr. Scott.

23 Q Well now, Dr. Clark, if  
24 the pipeline were at a crossing to intercept this  
25 ground water flow, I take it that there would be  
26 presumably no icing at the customary place unless  
27 a solution for the problem were found.

28 A Do I understand you to  
29 mean that we wouldn't put the pipeline where an  
30 icing naturally occurs?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q No, I am suggesting that  
2 if the pipeline in the type of diagram I've described  
3 intercepted the ground water flow, there would be no  
4 icing at the customary place, and in considering  
5 that, I ask you to leave aside your solution to which  
6 I will come.

7 A If the pipeline did inter-  
8 cept the aquifer that was producing the open water,  
9 unless the open water was associated with a very deep  
10 source of water, that would be unaffected.

11 Q In that situation, if the  
12 bulb had that effect, I take it that there would be  
13 no icing at the customary place?

14 A That's a good possibility,  
15 yes.

16 Q And if that customary  
17 place were a place for fish, there would be either no  
18 fish or they would be trapped and die?

19 A If the icing depleted  
20 their water, that's correct.

21 Although I should say that we  
22 have found open water in the lower reaches of rivers  
23 where there is substantial icing upstream from it.

24 Q Now, Dr. Cooper in his  
25 overview evidence, Dr. Church showed us a photograph  
26 of an icing that developed below the river bed and  
27 lifted it up by several feet. Have you seen that  
28 photograph?

29 WITNESS COOPER:

30 A No sir.



1 Q I would like to show you  
2 Exhibit number -- photo number 76R, page 33 of the  
3 exhibit which was put in earlier in the week which is  
4 Mr. Church's photographs. I don't have the exact  
5 exhibit number, Mr. Commissioner, and ask you to look  
6 at the second photograph.

7 A Yes, sir.

8 Q And that appears to be,  
9 I take it, what Dr. Church has described?

10 A Yes, sir.

11 Q In fact, I think we have  
12 Dr. Church in the picture, don't we?

13 A Yes, sir.

14 Q Now, in the Battell report,  
15 and as I understand the applicant's reply to Question  
16 38, it is stated that the pipeline might cause exten-  
17 sive ices, icings where it crosses frozen rivers  
18 with significant ground water flow below. And you  
19 agree with that?

20 A Well yes, under the condi-  
21 tions that we've discussed in the past 20 minutes.

22 Q Yes. Well now, is it not  
23 possible that such deep icings might endanger the  
24 line, the pipeline?

25 WITNESS CLARK:

26 A I think that that is clearly  
27 an effective stress problem as we've described it,  
28 and what Dr. Church has shown there as I see it from  
29 a very brief glance, is where a layer of frozen soil  
30 has had water under pressure and it has lifted it





1 under that pressure. A comparable situation might  
2 be if a water main breaks near your house and your  
3 basement floor lifts and cracks, the house doesn't  
4 lift and crack.

5 Q No, but I agree with your  
6 analysis of what Dr. Church has described, but isn't  
7 it conceivable that that could be a danger to the  
8 integrity of the pipe, or expose it to pressure?

9 A The amount of force that  
10 that water can generate is limited by the overburden  
11 pressure. In other words, using my analogy, that's  
12 why the floor breaks and why the house doesn't lift,  
13 so it's not axiomatic that it would do damage to the  
14 pipeline, because that situation develops.

15 Q Well, why can't it exert  
16 that pressure on the pipe and do damage to the pipe?

17 A It's -- here we are dealing  
18 with a thin layer of frozen soil where with the pipe  
19 you're dealing with, as you've shown, a very substantial  
20 rigid element with a mass of frozen soil above  
21 it, and if that mass of frozen soil were not above  
22 the pipe, we wouldn't be cutting off the water.

23  
24 Q Well, is it your position  
25 that the soil is going to give way before the pipe  
26 does?

27 A Oh, the crust would give  
28 way before the pipe.

29 Q Yes. Well what studies  
30 have you done in connection with this problem?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                   A     Well the studies per se  
2     -- it's more by way of devising a solution for deeper  
3     burial in these crossings, for example. It's  
4     analysis of situations that indicate that that problem  
5     just wouldn't exist.

6                   Q     What I'm getting at is is  
7     there in fact any report, study or analysis to which  
8     we can have access, that catalogues any work that  
9     you have done in relation to this particular problem?

10                  A     No, there's not a report  
11     now, but there is a study that is underway. It has  
12     been for some time and it will be continued even  
13     through the summer, and ultimately we will have a  
14     report on it.

15                  Q     I may be here in September,  
16     Dr. Clark, so if you have it, I'd be grateful to have  
17     that, because there appears to be no other study of  
18     which we're aware that deals with the problem. Would  
19     that be correct?

20                  A     Well, our objective here  
21     has been to expose to you and your advisors as quickly  
22     as possible any time we have a study for you to  
23     see and we certainly would do the same then.

24                  Q     Well now, Dr. Cooper, I  
25     want to refer back again to Mr. Nuttall's report and  
26     his use, as explained by you, of the word "damaging",  
27     and I want to do so by referring to the Environmental  
28     Protection Board report which I think Mr. Commissioner  
29     is already an exhibit, On page 9 of that report,  
30     in Volume IV, there is a description of how large



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 icings have been observed to explode, and the authors  
2 say this, and I quote from page 9, column 1:

3 "Occasionally the water  
4 pressures that create icing mounds are  
5 large enough to cause the mounds to explode,  
6 nearby structures and activities may be  
7 threatened. The most dramatic instance  
8 of such an explosion was recorded in  
9 March, 1928 on the Onan River in Siberia  
10 where a block of ice, 62 feet long, 16  
11 feet wide and five and a half feet thick  
12 was carried along the river icing surface  
13 about 400 feet downstream shearing away  
14 a smallbridge".

15 And then a citation of the report is given. Are  
16 you familiar with that observation that is set out  
17 in the Environmental Protection Board's report?

18 WITNESS COOPER: A I'm familiar with some  
19 documentation on this, and in various discussions  
20 I've had, we've never really been able to confirm  
21 the meaning of explode in these descriptions.  
22 When we look at the pressures that are possible, we  
23 find it very difficult to believe that an explosion  
24 per se could happen, that it would be more due to  
25 expansion forces, et cetera.

26 Q Well, are you familiar  
27 with the recorded instance which is referred to in  
28 the Environmental Protection Board's report?

29 A No I'm not sir, no.

30 Q I take it, giving a more





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 general meaning to the term "explode", you would  
2 agree that pressures can be created so that the ice  
3 is transported at some distances under great force?

4 A Well, no, what I'd agree  
5 on is that pressures can build up natrally beneath  
6 the icing to an extent that it will force water to  
7 the top of the ice, and of course that's the mechanism  
8 by which they develop, by flooding over top.

9 Q Well, in that particular  
10 recorded case, a block of ice was carried some  
11 distance, obviously under some pressure, because it  
12 sheared away a bridge. Is it not conceivable that  
13 without solution, that kind of thing may occur when  
14 these pressures exist?

15 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

16 A May I comment here, Mr.  
17 Scott? There are two aspects of the problem; one  
18 is the pressure associated with the venting of water  
19 from its confinement and the other is the magnitude  
20 of water that will then issue.

21 Our understanding of the mech-  
22 anics of confinement associated with icing development,  
23 is that the water pressure cannot exceed the weight  
24 of soil over it, since this is a few feet, perhaps  
25 five, six, eight feet, the magnitude of the water  
26 pressure from consideration just of equilibrium,  
27 can't be any greater than that.

28 When it tries to become  
29 greater than that, and -- it then lifts the bed  
30 and begins to vent.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Now, when it does vent, if there  
2 is a substantial amount of water contained in the  
3 aquifer, a lot of water can then come out and can  
4 transport things, but the association of a transport  
5 with high pressure doesn't follow.

6 Q Well, I take it that the  
7 transportation is achieved by the high pressure?

8 A No, it's achieved by the  
9 discharge of water out of the venting.

10 Q Well then, what --

11 A -- the high pressure --

12 Q Well, what moves the ice?

13  
14 A It's the flow of water  
15 moving blocks of ice.

16 Q all right. So that I take  
17 it it's conceivable that the kind of thing that was  
18 observed in this report can happen, the water under  
19 pressure is released in quantity and carries ice with  
20 it in such a way that damage can be done to whatever  
21 it runs into?

22 MR. GENEST: That question,  
23 I take it Mr. Scott, would assume that an observation  
24 made in Siberia in 1928 can be relied upon as  
25 accurate?

26 MR. SCOTT: Well it's reported  
27 -- is my friend suggesting it's not?

28 MR. GENEST: Well I --

29 MR. SCOTT: It's reported by a  
30 professional. I'm prepared to accept that.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 MR. GENEST: I'm not.

2 MR. SCOTT: Well, the question  
3 I was asking Dr. Morgenstern has eluded me, but I  
4 take it to be this, that if the pressure exists, the  
5 water is released, is that correct?

6 A Yes.

7 Q And the water, because it  
8 is released under pressure, may move with some speed?

9 A A large discharge can  
10 come out and it can then move down the surface.

11 Q With some speed, presum-  
12 ably?

13 A Depending on the slope,  
14 it's a function of local conditions.

15 Q Yes, yes.

16 A In steep ground it would  
17 move faster, and gentle ground it would move more  
18 slowly. And also it's a function of the confinement  
19 of the channel, a variety of things like that.

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q The force with which  
3 it's released, that is I suppose the pressure under  
4 which it is held until it is released, will that  
5 effect the rate at which the water moves upon exit  
6 from the pressure source?

7 A It would be more con-  
8 trolled by the nature of the uplifting and breaking  
9 of the ground, rather than the actual source pressure.  
10 The point the maximum pressure could get to before  
11 it begins to bend would be limited by the weight of  
12 material above it.

13 Q And I take it that that  
14 water can carry a large piece of ice in appropriate  
15 cases.

16 A It's certainly moving  
17 water can transport things, and then how large now  
18 becomes a function of how much water and channel  
19 configuration and so forth.

20 Q Are Dr. Morgenstern or  
21 Dr. Cooper or Dr. Hollingshead or any of you  
22 familiar with that paper reported in 1960 by Checko  
23 Teoh? I don't know the precise reference but it's  
24 contained in detail in the Environmental Protection  
25 Board's Report.

26 WITNESS HOLLINGSHEAD: No sir,

27  
28 WITNESS COOPER: No sir,  
29 I'm not.

30 Q Would an examination  
of that paper





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 potentially lead to any qualification of your views?  
3 No, what concerns me is that all of you have given  
4 direct answers to my questions, for which I'm grate-  
5 ful, as I understand it none of you are familiar with  
6 the single reported incidence. Would it help to look  
7 at that report?

8 WITNESS COOPER: Well, we could  
9 certainly better comment if we could study it  
10 in some detail.

11 WITNESS HARDY: What is the  
12 reference again?

13 Q Well, it will be in the  
14 back of the Environmental Protection Board's Report.  
15 I don't have the details, it's a 1960 report.

16 Now, Dr. Clark, on page  
17 19 of the canned evidence, again dealing with your  
18 responses to the Assessment Group's Report, you were  
19 dealing with the principle of convection, which if I  
20 remember correctly, is the principle by which heat  
21 is transmitted through flowing water in these  
22 circumstances.

23 WITNESS CLARK: That is  
24 correct.

25 Q And at page 19 on the  
26 last paragraph of the page you say, and I quote:

27 "In general the effects of convection on the  
28 development of the frost bulb around a chilled  
29 pipeline are twofold: Firstly convection  
30 tends to reduce the size of the frost bulb."

And I think that was the evidence that you gave.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A Yes.

Q And I take it the theory  
is that the water , the ground water in our diagram  
moving through the March diagram carries heat to the  
frost bulb and in your words "tends to reduce the  
size of the frost bulb."

A That's correct, yes.

Q Well now, in the Battell  
Report in their summary on the last page they say:

"In general the results indicate that moderate  
sub-surface flow can have a significant effect  
on the size and distribution of the freeze zone  
around a chilled pipe. In local regions where  
permafrost is not present but where weather  
conditions cause several feet of soil surface  
freezing, a chilled pipeline may drive the  
local frost zone to a depth several times that  
of the undisturbed freeze depth."

And then this remark:

"Moderate convection only delays somewhat  
this penetration."

Do you agree with that observation?

WITNESS SLUSARCHUK: It does  
delay the penetration. I think they are talking about  
-- I think they are referring to a case where there  
was a limited depth of soil in the geothermal program  
that they were actually referring to. A more reasonable  
-- so from that sense I think in the context that  
they're probably talking about there I wouldn't



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 disagree with it, but in general I would disagree with  
3 it, yes.

4 Q You disagree with that  
5 paragraph of the Battell Report in general.

6 A That point.  
7 MR. GENEST : Thats not what he said.  
8 MR. SCOTT : I'm sorry, what did he  
9 say? I'm not quite clear.

10 A I would disagree  
11 -- let me put it this way, in general if you've  
12 got convection, the equilibrium position that the  
13 frost bulb would tend to go towards in the convection  
14 case would be at a -- would be smaller than a case  
15 where convection was not considered. So in that sense  
16 it's not<sup>only</sup> delaying it, it's actually retarding it.

17 Q Well, --

18 A Stopping it, in fact.

19 Q Well, Battell says that  
20 moderate convection delays the frost penetration.

21 A It does that.

22 Q Yes, all right. I take  
23 it that they have nowhere suggested that it reduces  
24 the size of an existing frost bulb.

25 A No, I don't think that's  
26 correct at all, sir. You have our answer 38 there,  
27 and I'd like to refer you to 38-1, that the whole  
28 situation is really shown right on that figure exactly  
29 what we're talking about.

30 Q No, but what I'm asking  
you is that apart from theory, you have the Battell





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

Report which doesn't suggest that it reduces the size  
of the frost bulb --

A It does suggest it.  
Just in that particular sense that you're saying there  
it doesn't, but in other places it does suggest it,  
and that's how we got our information. I think it  
more than suggested it, it actually says it.

Q Well, perhaps by  
Monday you can produce the portion of the Battell Report  
--

A Yes sir.  
Q -- at which that  
point is made. Now, Dr. Cooper, would you agree  
that even though icings may generally form as has been  
said in the same location each year, that their extent  
is highly variable from year to year?

WITNESS COOPER: In some  
cases it is; in some cases it's, I believe, less  
variable.

Q I take it that you have  
some data, that Blench has some data on the size of  
icings.

A We did a reconnaissance  
that you were quoting earlier, that gave some rough  
data on that subject for one season, yes.

Q And is that the limit  
at the present time of your reported knowledge?

A Of our reported knowledge,  
as I mentioned earlier, there are ongoing studies.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q Now again in question 38  
3 of the Assessment Group Report, you agree that the  
4 frost bulb under rivers could lead to the formation  
5 of icings. We haven't been able to find a report on the  
6 size of these icings. Is there one as far as you know?

7 A No sir.

8 Q Well now I've been  
9 referred, Dr. Cooper, to the National Research Council  
10 workshop seminar on permafrost hydrology of 1974, and  
11 there is there a paper by Van Everdingin -- have I  
12 pronounced that right?

13 A I'm not sure,  
14 I'm not aware of it.

15 Q Which mentions east  
16 core mounds or open system pingos, and the author of  
17 that paper says:

18 "A last phenomena,"  
19 and I'm quoting,

20 "A last phenemena to be mentioned in connection  
21 with ground water discharge is the ice core  
22 mounds known as open system pingos about 500  
23 of which have been mapped by Hughes, 1969,  
24 in the Yukon. They are mainly confined to  
25 narrow valleys outside the limits of Wisconsin  
26 on Glaciation where permafrost is continuous but  
27 relatively thin, and where a small but continuous  
28 supply of ground water is available."

29 Are you familiar with that phenomena?  
30

A No sir. Is it associated



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 with river bed icings, or is this a ground ice?

3 Q It isn't clear from the  
4 answer. It's created, as the author says, by ground  
5 water discharge.

6 A Yes.

7 WITNESS HARDY: I think,  
8 Mr. Scott, that there are members of the panel that  
9 are quite familiar with pingos.

10 Q Well, I understand that,  
11 Dr. Hardy, but I think we're talking about a different  
12 kind of pingo now.

13 WITNESS CLARK: We are talking  
14 about a ground system pingo now.

15 Q Well, the author goes  
16 on, Dr. Cooper, to say:

17 "Gradual growth of ice lenses by freezing of  
18 seasonally or continually supplied ground  
19 water is likely responsible for the formation  
20 of these dome-like structures."

21 Does that help you?

22 WITNESS COOPER: Well, if you  
23 could indicate where this is a river bed associated  
24 feature, or is it a ground icing that is associated  
25 with a spring?

26  
27  
28  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
~~Hardy~~, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Let me read the rest of it.

2 A Okay.

3 Q "This particular possi-  
4 bility may warrant their further study in  
5 the light of potential influence of chilled  
6 gas/pipelines on the movement of sub-surface  
7 waters".

8 Now, are you familiar (a) with  
9 that phenomena?

10 A No, sir, I'm not.

11 Q And I take it that you  
12 have no reports or studies connected with what this  
13 author at least describes as open system pingsos  
14 caused in the way he's described?

15 A No, sir, I do not.

16 Q No.

17 WITNESS CLARK:

18 A The studies that I've  
19 described on icings that are being carried out by  
20 our hydrologist would include open system pingsos,  
21 in fact he's in close contact with Van Everdingin and other  
22 researchers in this field, and perhaps if you're  
23 looking to establish if there is any controversy  
24 I could say no.

25 Q Controversy with whom?

26 A Are we in agreement with  
27 that, I would say by and large we are in agreement,  
28 and --

29 Q Yes. Well what do you  
30 understand the author to mean then by an open system





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 pingo?

2 A I understand it to mean a  
3 ground icing phenomena.

4 Q I take it if the author  
5 were to refer to something other than a ground icing,  
6 you would not be able to comment on his observation?

7 A I believe he also comments  
8 on river icings.

9 Q Well do I understand that  
10 -- let me ask it more directly. What do you understand  
11 this problem refers to?

12 A Drainage on slopes.

13 Q And you don't see anything  
14 particular about this problem that is not directly  
15 dealt with in the icing question?

16 A The drainage on slopes  
17 involves more than icings, yes.

18 Q Isn't it conceivable that  
19 these pingos could form on the interior route near  
20 your pipeline?

21 A It's conceivable that they  
22 could form near our pipeline, yes.

23 Q Well has any observation  
24 or any report been made about the potential effect  
25 of the -- of pingos like the 500 which have been  
26 mapped?

27 A Relative to the pipeline,  
28 you're talking about?

29 Q Or to environmental  
30 concerns?



1                   A     Yes, we have discussed  
2     the implication of pingos on the pipeline, and I've  
3     heard discussions with others, with Dr. MacKay, and  
4     we don't view pingos as being a problem.

5                   Q     Well, the author of this  
6     report flags the desirability of further study in  
7     connection with chilled gas pipeline installation ,  
8     and what I'm asking is, has that study been done as  
9     far as you know, and can you refer us to it?

10                  WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

11                 A     As I understand his concern,  
12     he draws attention to the development of ground ice  
13     features, the open system pingo, when you have flow  
14     on slopes being impeded by freezing fronts, and this  
15     is the situation that the pipeline creates for  
16     example along the Norman range, and that the  
17     phenomenum of an open system pingo leads him to the  
18     concern for developing icing features in ground water  
19     flow systems.

20                         In this regard, Dr. Clark's  
21     people have ~~carried~~ out studies, are carrying out  
22     studies where ground water emissions occur and where  
23     the mechanics of open system pingo growth might be  
24     generated by the pipeline, and are putting together  
25     studies of drainage and so on that would reduce this  
26     problem.

27                   Q     Yes. Well are any of  
28     those studies available to us, or is it again a  
29     problem of their being underway and not at hand?  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

WITNESS CLARK:

A It's part of the overall  
study that I've described.

Q No, but I take it that  
the answer to the question indicates that there is  
some study underway?

A Absolutely, yes.

Q Is that correct?

A That's correct.

Q Yes. I take it that there  
is no study presently available?

A There is no report presently  
available.

Q Well now, Dr. Clark, the  
solution proposed for this ground water problem and  
its various manifestations is, as you have said,  
at page 2729 of the transcript, installation of a  
culvert insulated across the frost bulb. Is that  
in essence, correct?

A That's correct.

Q Now, I take it that this  
is a -- not to criticize it as a matter of principle,  
that this is a novel and unusual design, never  
before done under these circumstances?

A I guess I could be accused  
of saying that I'm giving a further glimpse of the  
obvious if I say that we haven't put in chilled pipe-  
lines under any rivers in the north.

Q And you're aware of no  
case in which this solution has, in fact, been tested





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 on the ground?

2 A Well, the solution of  
3 carrying water through frozen ground has been tested  
4 in many cases, has been used practically in many cases  
5 for years and years.

6 Q Well, have you any reports  
7 or studies that show, or any geothermal work available  
8 to us, that show that these culverts will do the job  
9 in the context in which they are presented here?

10 A There are a number of  
11 reports available in the literature on insulated  
12 pipes in frozen ground. I could provide you with  
13 some references on that.

14 Q Well, I would be grateful  
15 -- I would be grateful, not particularly for works  
16 on insulated culverts in frozen ground, but I'm  
17 interested in insulated culvert work that may have  
18 been done or papers that may have been written that  
19 relate to the solution that is proposed for this  
20 particular problem. Is there anything of that type?

21 A No, I don't believe that  
22 the elements that go into this solution, there are  
23 papers relating to each of the elements.

24 Q Well, let me ask you some  
25 questions that occur to me. How are you going to  
26 select the proper culvert size?

27 A That would be selected on  
28 the basis of what quantity of water it was necessary  
29 to carry, at what velocity it was necessary to  
30 carry, and so on. Selections of culvert size I think



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusachuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 is a fairly straightforward thing.

2 Q How are you going to find  
3 out those things?

4 A This would be, I believe,  
5 revealed by the types of studies that we are doing.  
6 Final design detail predicts that.

7 Q Well, do I understand then  
8 that you are presently doing studies that will reveal  
9 that matter, will reveal that information with respect  
10 to every crossing on the Yukon slope?

11 A We understand, first of  
12 all, permeability. We have information on where icings  
13 occur naturally. We have information on where fish  
14 over winter, the types of studies that we are doing  
15 are to locate this as precisely as possible the  
16 aquifers during winter and summer field work programs.

17 We -I think, have identified  
18 all the elements necessary to go into the solution,  
19 and it's simply a matter of carrying on.

20 Q Well, wouldn't you agree  
21 that different sizes of culvert are going to be re-  
22 quired, depending on the site situation?

23 A Not necessarily, it's a  
24 matter of size and frequency, different spacing of  
25 the same size might be used. That could be the more  
26 common feature.

27 Q Well when you say might be  
28 used, what do you mean?

29 A Well, <sup>if</sup> it's a very small  
30 area, then a very small amount of water would use one



Cark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 culvert. We might use them every 10 feet in other  
2 places, the same size.

3 Q Well is it intended that  
4 the construction superintendent, when he comes to the  
5 river, should decide this question?

6 A Absolutely not.

7 Q And therefore I take it  
8 that the dimensions of all these problems are going  
9 to be mapped and those determinations made well in  
10 advance?

11 A That's certainly our  
12 intent.

13 Q Yes. Now, how will the  
14 culvert be placed in relation to the pipeline?

15 A Above it.

16 Q In every case?.

17 A At this point in time,  
18 that's what we conceive but I couldn't say for sure  
19 until we got the final design detail.

20 Q Is the culvert going to  
21 have any granular material in it?

22 A That's again a final  
23 design detail I wouldn't anticipate that it would.

24 Q You wouldn't anticipate  
25 that it would?

26 A Not at this point.

27 Q How are you going to  
28 handle the culvert inlet and outlet? Aren't those  
29 the key areas?

30 A Yes.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q How are you going to handle  
2 that?

3 A In a conventional manner.

4 Q Well, what's the convent-  
5 ional manner? I'm not party to these conventions.

6 A Perforated pipes, for  
7 instance.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: I'm sorry,  
9 what did you say?

10 A Perforated pipes with  
11 holes in. The handling of ground water in drainage  
12 systems and so on use all these techniques?

13 MR. SCOTT:

14 Q That's an extension of  
15 the pipe, is it not, with a lot of holes into which  
16 the water will seep or flow?

17 A Yes.

18 Q The same thing at the  
19 outlet?

20 A That would be a final  
21 detail that we would look at, I couldn't give that  
22 information for sure now.

23 Q Well, I agree that it may  
24 be a final detail, but it's crucial, isn't it,  
25 because if those two details aren't fully understood  
26 and worked out, the drainage system won't operate,  
27 will it?

28 A If we get water in, we have  
29 to get it out.

30 Q Yes, and you have to get





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 it out?

2 A Yes, indeed.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: When you  
4 say inlet and outlet, do you mean an inlet and outlet  
5 above the surface of the ground or --

6 A No, no, it would be  
7 entirely below the bed of the river.

8 Q Well inlet and outlet  
9 refer to the sections of the culvert on either side  
10 of the frost bulb?

11 A Yes. Perhaps sir, if I  
12 could -- I know you're going to refer to your drawing.  
13 I've got another one -- can I take advantage of the  
14 same process here and put one up that will show what  
15 I'm talking about?

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 The inlet and outlet is, of course, conceptionalized  
3 here, it shows the concept -- the upper diagram there  
4 shows a situation where you have a very deep gravel  
5 bed with a substantial flow. We have shown the dis-  
6 tortion of the frost bulb that would occur, in that  
7 case where the frost bulb wouldn't cut off the river  
8 we wouldn't put in a pipe, the water would flow around  
9 it. In the case of very shallow gravel bed where  
10 we would cut off the water, then you can see we've  
11 extended, which I reluctantly refer to as the Templeton  
12 Wall, but we've extended it down into the impermeable  
13 layer below and have carried the water through the  
14 upper part of the frost bulb. Again its relation to  
15 the pipe there throughout is purely conceptual.

16 Q Well, Dr. Clark, in  
17 both those examples there is no frost penetration  
18 below the river bed, is there?

19 A The bottom of the blue,  
20 you would be quite free to assume that that's into  
21 the river bed.

22 Q Well, what concerns me  
23 is that is there in every case going to be room for  
24 the pipe if the frost penetration comes down to there,  
25 you are not going to have much space unless it runs  
26 right through the gas pipe itself.

27 A We would go down deeper  
28 in that circumstance.

29 Q Bury deeper?

30 A Oh yes, the depth of



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 burial will be dependent upon the natural frost  
3 penetration, and of course as the frost goes naturally  
4 through the bed itself, then we're not cutting off  
5 anything. You'll agree with me there.

6 Q No, I didn't understand  
7 your observation.

8 A If the blue extended  
9 right down to that impermeable barrier with no pipeline,  
10 then we're not dealing with a problem.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Then you  
12 haven't changed anything?

13 A We haven't changed  
14 anything there, no.

15 MR. SCOTT: Well now, I think  
16 it's obvious, isn't it, that this resolution of the  
17 problem calls for a great -- a large variety of  
18 responses that can only be determined on the site.

19 A I don't believe that's  
20 obvious at all.

21 WITNESS HARDY: I think, Mr.  
22 Scott, to put this in its proper context, there is  
23 nothing new on this project as far as putting in  
24 culverts as an installation is concerned. Every time  
25 you build a railroad or a highway, you see, you have  
26 the same problem, and there are books such as you  
27 have by the same author, Charlie Neal, you see, that  
28 deal with culverts, culvert design. What is different  
29 on this project are some of these special freezing  
30 effects so that the problem here becomes simply a





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 detail that is added to the conventional design of  
3 culvert systems on a project such as this, or a railroad  
4 or a highway.

5 WITNESS CLARK: I didn't mean  
6 also to eliminate entirely the necessity for good  
7 sense and good judgment during construction.

8 Q What is the anticipated  
9 life of the culvert pipe?

10 A Life of the pipeline.

11 Q It better be, hadn't it.

12 A I'm sure they will both  
13 have a long and healthy life.

14 Q If something should  
15 happen and it gets blocked up, what are you going to do?

16 A Well, the first thing  
17 we'd do is we would have an indication that it's  
18 blocked up, and it would be replaced.

19 WITNESS HARDY: That is a  
20 standard maintenance problem, of course, blockage of  
21 the culverts.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: May I  
23 ask a question? The drawing, Dr. Clark, shows the  
24 culvert passing through the frost bulb, and the pipe-  
25 line, that white dot, is four feet in diameter. Was  
26 that supposed to be the scale, does it mean the  
27 culvert would be the same size as the pipeline?

28 WITNESS CLARK: No, no sir.  
29 That is just conceptual. The culvert could be six  
30 inches to 18 inches in size, I would think.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

MR. SCOTT: Both Dr. Clark  
and I have chosen our own scales in presenting our  
drawings.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, his  
is colored.

MR. SCOTT: The red of the  
bulb looks ominously like the red that is associated  
with the maple leaf route. I think the drawings  
will be used by either applicant in due course, except  
the maple leaf won't require this particular problem  
to be solved.

WITNESS CLARK: The colors  
were chosen by geologists. They have a special feeling  
for color.

MR. SCOTT: They are not  
remote from politics either, that's my observation.

MR. GENEST: The frost bulb  
will be maple leaf shaped.

MR. SCOTT: Well, are there  
any detailed criteria established for deciding at  
which stream crossings you're going to put these  
culverts?

A No, there would be  
a number of elements to go into that. Our first  
consideration has to be how it would affect the  
environment, because we don't see it as really affect-  
ing the integrity of the pipeline.

Q Well, to use a phrase



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that is common, is there any methodology devised for  
3 establishing these criteria?

4 A I would say yes, we  
5 have, I think, a well-conceived program that will  
6 establish the criteria.

7 Q Are there any details  
8 of it available for us?

9 A No, what I could -- we  
10 have for instance a study of the geophysical applica-  
11 tions to the pipeline in its entirety under way, and  
12 a report on that will be prepared if we're on schedule  
13 within a few weeks. The intent there is to outline  
14 the methods that would be used in these situations  
15 to further define the areas from a physical point  
16 of view. The fish biologists, of course, are inputting  
17 their information on that aspect of the environment.  
18 The river engineers input their information on the  
19 potential impact of icings, for instance, on shifting  
20 flow for lateral scour. So all of these put together,  
21 I think, will establish a rational method of design.

22 Q Well, I take it that  
23 the pipe that runs across, the drainage pipe is going  
24 to be installed at the same time as the pipeline.

25 A No, it will follow the  
26 pipeline.

27 Q Well, how long will it  
28 follow the pipeline?

29 A After the pipeline is  
30 in place.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q No, but is it going to  
3 be put in the same --

4 A The same construction  
5 period. It's my intent now, would be that it would  
6 be put in during the same construction season but I  
7 don't believe it would be essential, it has to be  
8 put in before the line goes into operation. It may  
9 prove the logistics of things may prove that it's  
10 better to put it in the following season. I couldn't  
11 speculate on that.

12 Q It clearly has to be put  
13 in, in every case, if it's to be remedial, before the  
14 pipe is chilled.

15 A That's right.

16 Q Yes, because if it isn't  
17 you won't have any fish in the classic case where it's  
18 required.

19 A I think that's not a  
20 correct observation.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: May I  
22 stop you both for a minute? You were talking about  
23 a culvert a minute ago. Now you're talking about  
24 a drainage pipe.

25 MR. SCOTT: Well, I've used  
26 drainage pipe; I think culvert is the word Dr. Clark  
27 has used.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: You're still  
29 on the same thing?

30 WITNESS CLARK: Yes sir.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 MR. SCOTT: Well, let's take  
3 this example where the pipe is installed and chilled  
4 in a river bed and it is decided for some reason not  
5 to put the culvert or drainage pipe in till the follow-  
6 ing year after chilling. How are you in a position  
7 to guarantee that the fish that winter in those pools  
8 won't be killed?

9 A Well, we would never  
10 gamble on that. There are two, if you like, theories,  
11 as to where the water that keeps the over-wintering  
12 area open comes from. One is that it comes from very  
13 deep springs. Our own feeling is, and our planning now  
14 is that it comes in shallow aquifers. We have made  
15 a conservative assumption, that assumption being that  
16 we will affect the fish and therefore we will put  
17 these in at the time of the construction. In fact, all  
18 of our drainage and erosion control methods, the cost  
19 benefit of putting it in when you're there so far  
20 exceeds coming back and doing it later that we wouldn't  
21 gamble.

22 Q The environmental  
23 benefits may be identical in that case.

24 A I think in many cases  
25 they go hand in hand.

26 Q In any event, that is  
27 your expressed intention?

28 A Yes sir.

29 Q Dr. Cooper, is the pipe-  
30 line going to cross any areas where there are natural



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

icings or will be natural icings at the time of construction?

WITNESS COOPER: Yes, there could be some natural icings at the time of construction.

Q Yes, and indeed I think on some of the maps, natural icings are shown at the point where the pipeline crosses.

A This may well be.

Q Just for the purposes of the record I refer to the maps in your water availability study of May, 1973. I won't trouble to put them in now. How is this problem going to be handled?

A From a construction viewpoint?

Q Well, how are you going to handle the drainage?

A Well, I'd have to ask Mr. Williams on that construction.

Q Here is the situation, the pipe is in the course of construction, and it is going through an existing natural icing. The icing is there, and the pipeline construction crew is coming to it. How is that problem going to be dealt with? As a draining problem and as a problem of maintaining the life of the fish who may water in adjacent pools.

WITNESS CLARK: But the line isn't being chilled, sir.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 The icing would be identified well ahead of the opera-  
3 tion.

4 Q No, but isn't the ditch  
5 going to fill with water as you dig the ditch across  
6 the natural icing, isn't it going to fill with water  
7 and drain the adjacent pools?

8 A Oh.

9 Q You'll get char for  
10 lunch, you'll just have to pick it up.

11 A There's no way that that  
12 pool could be supporting fish, if there wasn't water  
13 in there.

14 Q I understand --

15 A The ditch is not going  
16 to drain a pool. We're going down below this river,  
17 we have a low point there, with water all around.  
18 The ditch fills with water much the same as it does in  
19 downtown areas where we drill through water all the  
20 time.

21 Q Well, let's be realistic  
22 for a moment. Isn't it perfectly clear, Dr. Clark,  
23 that in that situation where you have to proceed  
24 through a natural icing, it may not be of great  
25 consequence but pools are going to be drained and  
26 fish may die. It may not be the end of the world,  
27 there ~~may~~ be other fish.

28 A I cannot conceive that  
29 happening.

30 Q No risk?





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

A      No risk absolutely

there.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24
- 25
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29
- 30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q And I take it that your  
2 general proposition is that there is no risk with  
3 respect to any of these -- with respect to this  
4 solution?

5 A I don't believe there's risk  
6 in the sense that you're using it.

7 Q Well now I would just like  
8 to ask Dr. cooper one or two questions if I could  
9 before the break, Mr. Commissioner, that arose out of  
10 his answers the other day.

11 Dr. Cooper, you said on Tuesday  
12 that the 100 year flood of the Mackenzie River could  
13 be determined adequately, based on 25 years of record?

14 WITNESS COOPER:

15 A I believe if my memory  
16 serves me right, 25 to 35 in my opinion. .

17 Q Yes, and I think you said  
18 that 35 to 50 years of data would be adequate for all  
19 other rivers on this project?

20 A They would be adequate if  
21 --

22 MR. GENEST: Have you got the  
23 transcript, Mr. Scott?

24 MR. SCOTT: Yes, I have, page  
25 3068. Now you haven't got the transcript.

26 Volume 25, Mr. Commissioner,  
27 beginning at line 15, Question:

28 "Well, just so I understand  
29 for later purposes, is it your proposition  
30 that you can obtain a reliable estimate of



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the 100 year flood after 25 years of  
2 observation on the Mackenzie Valley --  
3 on the Mackenzie River?

4 A Yes, it's my opinion  
5 that 25 years on the Mackenzie River is  
6 adequate. On a lot of other rivers I'd  
7 say no to that.

8 Q What's required on  
9 other rivers that are within the ambit  
10 of this project?

11 A I would say 35 to  
12 50."

13 A That's correct, and I  
14 meant that in reference to if we would use a 100  
15 year flood that was based on historical records.

16 Q Yes. And would you agree  
17 that the true 100 year flood cannot be determined,  
18 and I mean the true 100 year flood can't be determined  
19 without an infinite number of years?

20 A That's correct.

21 Q Yes. And obviously one's  
22 estimate, one's approach or estimate towards the  
23 true 100 year flood becomes better the longer the  
24 record of observation goes on?

25 A That's correct, sir.

26 Q Yes, and that although  
27 you can never know, because we don't have infinity  
28 available, that your estimate is right, you do in  
29 fact compute the chances of being right?

30 A That can be done, sir.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q Yes. Well now, you said  
2 that 25 years on the Mackenzie River is adequate. I  
3 want to get a little clearer what is contemplated by  
4 the word adequate, and would you agree with me that  
5 plus or minus 20 percent would be adequate?

6 A I haven't done the stat-  
7 istical analysis that would be required to -- for me  
8 to quote a figure like that.

9 Q Well -- are you able to  
10 quote any figure as to what adequate means in your  
11 answer? Is it 25, have I got it wrong? What is the  
12 --

13 A 25 what?

14 Q Plus or minus?

15 A There would be a plus or  
16 minus, there would be a plus or minus value associated  
17 with that, yes.

18 Q All right. Well now, can  
19 you give us your judgment, I understand you haven't  
20 thought about it, about what that figure would be.  
21 Is it 20, is it 25, what is it?

22 judgment A Sir, I can't give you that  
23 /without doing the analysis.

24 Q Well then what did you mean  
25 by adequate?

26 A Well what I would -- what  
27 I meant by it is I believe with 25 years of record,  
28 we can predict a 100 year flood on the Mackenzie  
29 River, and of course we would design taking into  
30 account higher flows where necessary.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 I do not -- like if the integrity  
2 of the pipeline was based on our 100 year estimate, I  
3 wouldn't accept that as being satisfactory, I would  
4 want to look at higher flows as well.

5 Q But in predicting this, you  
6 have said that 25 years' observation is adequate.  
7 Now, obviously you agree with me that it's not per-  
8 fect?

9 A No, certainly it isn't  
10 perfect.

11 Q All right. Well, what is  
12 the margin of error that is acceptable to you in the  
13 determination of adequate?

14 A I'm having a little trouble  
15 getting your question, what you're driving at.

16 Q Well you're predicting,  
17 or in determining the 100 year flood, you're predicting  
18 the maximum flood that will occur in a period of time  
19 that you and I, unless we are unlucky we're not going  
20 to be around to observe?

21 A No sir, we're not doing  
22 that.

23 Q What are you doing?

24 A We are predicting an ex-  
25 treme flood event that we're using for purposes of  
26 preliminary design.

27 Q Well over the weekend,  
28 can you determine the margin of error that you  
29 contemplate when you say a 25 year observation is  
30 adequate?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 A Certainly.

2 Q Thank you.

3 We can take a break now, Mr.  
4 Commissioner. I'm moving onto a new subject.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Well this  
6 is a coffee break without coffee then.

7 MR. SCOTT: Oh well then, don't  
8 bother, I can go ahead.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: We will let  
10 you know as soon as it arrives.

11 MR. SCOTT:

12 Q Dr. Morgenstern, I want  
13 to turn to some questions that relate to unstable  
14 slopes. I gather first of all it would not be going  
15 too far to say that the issues inherent in the  
16 analysis of slope stability or instability, and  
17 this isn't intended to be pejorative, but is really  
18 an art that relies on very precise and thorough and  
19 calculated judgment?

20 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

21 A It relies, certainly to  
22 some degree on experience.

23 Q Yes. And would you agree  
24 that with respect to slope stability problems in  
25 permafrost areas, the level of experience to which  
26 you've referred, is compared to other matters, relatively  
27 low?

28 A Yes. Well less.

29 Q Now, in your evidence at  
30 -- I don't know the volume number, but at page 2346,



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 -- it's Volume XX, Mr. Genest. 2346, you began by  
2 referring to a number of studies done by government,  
3 universities, industries and the applicant.

4 A Yes.

5 Q You observed that while  
6 these studies were not in anticipation coordinated,  
7 the result has been that they have been as we can see,  
8 complementary, and a whole view has developed?

9 A Yes.

10 Q Yes, and then you went on  
11 to say they, meaning the studies, I presume of the  
12 various types, have led to a clear understanding of  
13 where land slides occur in permafrost terrain, how  
14 to calculate the likelihood of their occurrence, and  
15 how to design stabilization measures to prevent or  
16 inhibit them, and it's the purpose of my presentation  
17 now to illustrate some of the findings that have  
18 brought us to this position of clear understanding?

19 A Yes.

20 Q Well now, I got the impress-  
21 ion from that that the uncertainties have now been  
22 overcome in this area, is that correct?

23 A With regard to establishing  
24 safe acceptable designs, yes, that's my view.

25 Q Is there any realm of  
26 uncertainty left in respect of slope instability or  
27 its solutions?

28 A In terms of evaluating  
29 input data, there will always be uncertainty with  
30 regard to knowing precisely the soil properties, and





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Mogenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 more specifically with regard to permafrost terrain,  
2 precisely the ground ice configuration.

3 Q Are there any other uncer-  
4 tainties in this discipline at all, or is everything  
5 else now decided?

6 A There's an element of un-  
7 certainty about the rate of advance of the thaw  
8 front.

9 Q I'm sorry?

10 A There's an element of  
11 uncertainty about the rate of advance of the thaw  
12 front.

13 Q Yes. So we have those  
14 three elements about which there is, as you put it,  
15 a range of uncertainty, in your ability to observe,  
16 I take it that's what you're talking about, is it?

17 A To know in detail.

18 Q To know in detail?

19 A Yes.

20 Q Are there any other uncer-  
21 tainties that exist in this art of combined experience  
22 and judgment?

23 A Well --

24 Q No?

25 A Perhaps, these are the  
26 most important ones.

27 Q Well, I would be grateful  
28 to know if there are any others in your view, as one  
29 of the leading men in the field.

30 A These I think are the main



clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 ones.

2 Q Yes. Are there any  
3 uncertainties left to us in the design or application  
4 of solutions? Both in the laboratory and on the  
5 ground?

6 A We can establish safe  
7 solutions.

8 Q No uncertainties inherent  
9 in that?

10 A Other than to the degree  
11 that we've already admitted that uncertainty exists  
12 in knowing ground conditions.

13 Q No other uncertainties  
14 apart from the ones you've referred to, therefore?

15 I mean this is my for once and  
16 for all opportunity to ask questions, I want to be  
17 sure I have them all.

18 A Yes, yes.

19 Q No others?

20 A None come to my mind at this  
21 time.

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q Well now, in a graph or  
3 chart that you made available, you demonstrated that  
4 not more than 2 to 3% of the pipeline route exhibits  
5 potential instability on the basis of conventional  
6 criteria. Do you remember that?

7 A On the basis of the  
8 criteria that we have adopted for establishing,  
9 selecting these slopes, yes.

10 Q Well now, I've worked  
11 that out --

12 A Conservative criteria,  
13 not conventional.

14 Q I've worked that out  
15 and it comes to roughly 25 miles of route exhibiting  
16 potential instability, would that sound about right?

17 A Yes.

18 Q Yes.

19 A Classified as.

20 Q And of the 686 slopes  
21 that have been catalogued, I think it's obvious, is  
22 it not, that a very substantial number of them are  
23 short slopes scattered along the route.

24 A Yes.

25 Q Yes, so that our 25  
26 miles or whatever it is, breaks down into -- there  
27 are obviously some big ones, but a number of short  
28 slopes that are scattered at various places.

29 A Yes.

30 Q And I suggest to you



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that your observations make it clear that many, if  
3 not most of those slopes, are or do occur on valley  
4 walls and river banks, and other like areas.

5 A Yes.

6 Q And you would agree  
7 with me that those are areas of substantial environmen-  
8 tal concern, generally speaking.

9 A Yes.

10 Q Well now, when you were  
11 talking about slope stability and slope failures, I  
12 take it that you're talking about what I would  
13 normally call landslides and mudslides.

14 A Yes.

15 Q Yes, and these slides  
16 involve, I think as you told us, a range of materials  
17 that run all the way from soft clays to rocks. Hard  
18 rock.

19 A Yes, in the conventional  
20 sense. My presentation was addressed to landslides  
21 in permafrost, ground ice problems.

22 Q And that these failures  
23 just so I understand it, are gravity forces.

24 A Yes, except when  
25 exaggerated by earthquakes.

26 Q And I take it that what  
27 we have not been talking about in your exposition is  
28 erosion by running water.

29 A Yes.

30 Q And we've not been talking





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 about water-eroded gullies and that sort of thing.

3 A That's right.

4 Q Yes, now I take it from  
5 what you've said that you would agree, however, that  
6 in addition to the cases that you have discussed and  
7 analyzed, many slope instability problems owe their  
8 existence to a combined effect of water erosion and  
9 slope failure.

10 A Problems of transport  
11 of sediment owe their effect to a combination of  
12 these two, yes.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,  
14 problems of transport?

15 A Yes, I was rephrasing  
16 slope stability to me, a problem of slope stability  
17 to me is a problem involving gravity forces, the  
18 sheering of soils and so forth; whereas a problem  
19 of slope stability might be generally interpreted  
20 as one concerned with the movement of the sediment  
21 as well, here the erosion moving over a slope so  
22 that the transport of sediment might be due to the  
23 breakup of the ground, and then running water coming  
24 over the sliding mass. So that the slope problem  
25 might be a sediment transport problem as opposed to  
26 a mass sheering problem. Is that helpful?

27 Q I'm not -- forgive  
28 me, I'm not quite with you. I understand it when you  
29 say that the slope may sheer.

30 A Yes.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q And the toe of the slope  
3 presumably certainly in open water, if you're talking  
4 about a river crossing, or a stream crossing, is  
5 likely to be transported downstream. Now I take it  
6 that you were talking about instability in slopes  
7 unconnected with river or stream crossings.

8 A Yes. Mr. Scott asked  
9 me "Are slope problems not due to a combination of  
10 both gravity forces and river erosion?"

11 And I changed the terminology  
12 to say that the problem <sup>that</sup> results from a combination of  
13 these things is the movement of sediment in the  
14 water course. Slope problem in my terms just  
15 is due to the gravity forces.

16 MR. SCOTT: Q But it's a  
17 matter of general observation that the kind of pro-  
18 blems, gravity problems that you've been discussing  
19 and showing and exposing for us are frequently connec-  
20 ted with water or frequently seen with water erosion  
21 problems.

22 A Yes.

23 Q And it wasn't your  
24 intention to deal with the -- in that exposition --  
25 to deal with the water erosion case, if I can put it  
26 that way.

27 A That's right.

28 Q You were dealing with  
29 gravity problems.

30 A Yes.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

MR. GENEST: May I interrupt,  
Mr. Commissioner? Just to clear my mind, is Mr.  
Scott talking about a bank erosion by a water course  
or is he talking about erosion down the right-of-  
way?

MR. SCOTT: As I read Dr.  
Morgenstern's evidence, I suppose it's a tribute  
to him to say that it's sufficiently clear to say that  
even I was able, with minimal assistance, to compre-  
hend it. But I understood him to be saying that  
the forces that he was analyzing for us were gravity  
forces, and not water erosion forces. I have that  
correct, have I, Dr. Morgenstern?

WITNESS MORGENSTERN: Yes.

MR. GENEST: But water erosion  
by a water course, by a river, by a stream?

MR. SCOTT: Water erosion we  
will just have to leave it there, wherever it is  
occurring.

Q But I take it, to go  
back just one step, it is a matter of observation that  
water erosion is a problem that is found from time  
to time associated with the gravity slides that you  
were dealing with.

A Yes.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I  
think we're ready for coffee. We'll break for a  
few minutes.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR FEW MINUTES)





Clark, Hollingshead, McRobetts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. SCOTT:

Q Dr. Morgenstern, I take it that as a matter of general observation, we can say that some slopes are unstable in their natural state, and some slopes may become unstable as a result of changes effected by man?

WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

A Yes.

Q Now, I would like to deal just for a moment with the prediction of slope failure, and I take it that the prediction of slope failure is the first place at which you must start in attempting to approach the kind of problems that confront you with the Mackenzie Valley pipeline?

A Yes.

Q Now, you referred and I only bring it up again with some temerity to C sub V and I don't want to get into it, but I take it that that is one of the critical factors in what is called the quantitative analysis of the hazard of one type of slope failure?

A It's an important parameter.

Q Yes. And it is therefore an important -- the quantitative analysis of which it is a part, is essential to determine the factor of safety?

A It's an important guide in



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 our total design of slopes, yes.

2 Q Yes. And that generally  
3 speaking in permafrost terrain, some kinds of potential  
4 failure can presently be predicted in quantitative  
5 terms? That is, by the application of formula?

6 A Yes.

7 Q Yes, and that on the other  
8 hand, there are other potential failures in permafrost  
9 terrain that can presently be only interpreted  
10 qualitatively?

11 A Yes.

12 Q And a qualitative inter-  
13 pretation is a description in words of the process,  
14 rather than a formula?

15 A Yes, though formulae may  
16 be used to assist our interpretation.

17 Q And would it be correct to  
18 say that the elements of these analyses that are  
19 peculiar to permafrost areas, have been developed  
20 only recently, that is in the last five years?

21 A The quantitative components  
22 the formulae.

23 Q Yes. I observe, for example,  
24 that in the literature attached to the canned evidence,  
25 with one or two exceptions, some of which don't deal  
26 with permafrost, the permafrost slope instability  
27 literature, I will say nothing about the authors, is  
28 really 1971-1974.

29 A Yes, to a large degree.

30 Q Yes. And I think you would



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 perhaps agree that as yet there has been relatively  
2 limited experience in applying than in the actual  
3 field situation?

4 A The prediction of instability  
5 has, perhaps I should say that only a few people have  
6 much experience.

7 Q And even those are, and I  
8 look at two of them, even those -- the literature  
9 relates to the last three or four years?

10 A Yes.

11 Q Yes. Well I agree, Dr.  
12 Hardy, that you don't have to write it down to know it,  
13 but it certainly proves it.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: There was a  
15 man here during the first week of the overview that  
16 made that claim. He was from Fort Norman, I think it  
17 was.

18 MR. SCOTT:

19 Q But as compared with other  
20 kinds of slope instability problems, I take it that  
21 there is no doubt that the experience in permafrost  
22 terrain is much more limited?

23 A It's more than -- I think  
24 one draws on the experience in other terrains as well,  
25 of course.

26 Q And would you also agree  
27 that the magnitude of some of the input parameters  
28 in actual field situations, has been relatively  
29 little known?

30 A No, the new -- there are





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 two novel aspects, that come first to mind,  
2 have to do with the evaluation of melting processes,  
3 and the identification of ground ice forms.

4 The evaluation of melting pro-  
5 cesses, the thermal aspects of this problem, we feel  
6 are well in hand. The evaluation of ground ice is  
7 something that we always wish we could do better.

8 Q I ask you though if the  
9 magnitude of some of the input parameters is little  
10 known, in field situations?

11 MR. GENEST: I don't understand  
12 that question, the magnitude of the parameters?

13 MR. SCOTT: Well, maybe Dr.  
14 Morgenstern would, and if he agrees, he can explain it.

15 A If we refer to say, the  
16 formulae that we use,  $C \text{ sub } V$   
17 and other soil parameters, we feel that we can evaluate  
18 them on a conservative basis. While we may not know  
19 them precisely, we know their bounds quite well.

20 Q Yes. I asked that question,  
21 and perhaps I, like Mr. Genest, I don't understand it  
22 in its entirety, and I refer to a paper of yours and  
23 Dr. McRoberts called the "Stability of Thawing  
24 Slopes" in the Canadian Geotechnical Journal for Novem-  
25 ber, 1974, where at -- I want to file this as an  
26 exhibit -- where at page 465 you say,

27 "Little is known concerning  
28 the insight to magnitudes of these parameters  
29 and the role of cycles of freeze and thaw  
30 in affecting these parameters",





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 and I take it that there's no doubt about that?

2 A That is true.

3 Q Yes. You then go on,  
4 further down the page to say this, and I quote:

5 "The shortage of well  
6 documented field case records of thaw in-  
7 duced instability is obvious, and research  
8 into the insitu properties of a fine  
9 slope, coupled with excess pore pressures  
10 will certainly be of great value".

11 A Yes.

12 Q Yes. Also in that paper  
13 at page 466, you are talking about bimodal flows  
14 which is one of the flows that you described with  
15 the assistance of diagrams and photographs, is that  
16 not correct?

17 A Yes.

18 Q And you are dealing with,  
19 and I think you told us that a bimodal flow, and it's  
20 dangerous for me to try to synthesize, had at least  
21 two movements, one out in the direction of the valley  
22 or in the direction of gravity, and one back which  
23 was called an ablation?

24 A Yes, in the headward  
25 directions, yes.

26 Q I'm sorry, I didn't --

27 A In a headward direction.

28 Q In a headward direction?

29 A An ablating back scarp.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam.by Scott

Q In this paper at page  
466, the second column, you begin in your words,  
"To briefly consider the  
range of processes involved",  
and I have to tell you that you were talking about  
bimodal flows.

A Yes.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q And you say in the second  
3 paragraph on that page:

4 "A simple solution for the rate of ablation,"  
5 and that's the movement back toward the head, is  
6 that correct?

7 A That's correct.

8 Q  
9 "A simple solution for the rate of ablation  
10 has been presented which, in conjunction with  
11 observed ablation rates, yields a prediction  
12 of the heat flux available for melting.  
13 Although there are no reported measurements  
14 of the actual radiation impinging on ablating  
15 scarp, it is encouraging to be able to model  
16 the failure mechanism."

17 I take it there's nothing disputatious in that  
18 paragraph?

19 A When it was written,  
20 that's correct.

21 Q Is there any doubt  
22 about it now?

23 A There are measurements.

24 Q Yes.

25 "It is unlikely that such a pro --"  
26 oh, you may anticipate to what I'm going to refer.

27 "It is unlikely that such a process could  
28 be tolerated in the vicinity of any engineer-  
29 ing work, and if a bi-model flow is initiated,  
30 it will have to be stabilized immediately,





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

possibly by covering with insulation."

Is there anything wrong about that?

A No.

Q No. Well now, let me deal if I can for a moment with preventative stabilization. I understand the analysis to which you referred in your evidence was designed to provide either by formula or by analysis of the process, a prediction of the hazards?

A Yes.

Q Now I take it that having identified or predicted a slope which is hazardous or unstable, the preferable course is to prevent failure rather than to allow the hazard to actually occur and then take cleanup measures?

A In all cases, except when the failure is induced by the maximum probable earthquake.

Q Could you expand on that exceptional category for me?

A Where shallow failure -- this is not failure of the pipe, it's failure along the right-of-way -- can be shown to occur when the very, very large accelerations that we adopt for our maximum probable earthquake are used in the analysis, it's my view that we should accept these shallow failures and treat them as a remedial work. The alternative would be to employ these very conservative criteria at the outset and set about implementing the remedial works. This would, in itself, induce



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 environmental change and of course add to cost, and  
3 we would be exchanging reality which would be these  
4 sandwiches, berms and various things, which would  
5 be an intrusion, for a statistical improbability. So  
6 in that exceptional case, my view is to accept the  
7 damage which in any case would be a small increment  
8 of the damage that nature would be doing in that  
9 area; accept the damage under that high loading  
10 situation and fix it up afterwards.

11 Q So that in that case  
12 you've dealt with, what you really do is monitor and  
13 if necessary take remedial measures?

14 A We'd go in and fix up  
15 the right-of-way elsewhere.

16 Q But I take it that --  
17 I'm sorry?

18 A If, for the normal  
19 case, the conventional operating case, your statement  
20 earlier that we would evaluate and stop instability,  
21 I would say that is correct, yes.

22 Q And I take it that in  
23 terms of stopping instability -- well let me put it  
24 this way, the options for prevention when you have  
25 predicted a hazard are (1) to re-locate or (2) to  
26 alter the slope in such a way that its stability is  
27 increased?

28 A Yes, there are a variety  
29 of schemes listed in the documents.

30 Q Well now, you have set



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 out in answer to the Assessment Group's concern --  
3 or the applicant has -- a number of stabilization  
4 methods?

5 A Yes.

6 Q And you have given evid-  
7 ence about a number of stabilization methods. I take  
8 it from what you said in your evidence, speaking  
9 generally, it's apparent that there are a variety of  
10 slope stabilization techniques that have been devised  
11 and that have been tried and work in non-permafrost  
12 terrain?

13 A Yes.

14 Q And the history, or the  
15 experience of that is as these things go, substantial?

16 A Yes.

17 Q And that coming to  
18 permafrost problems for the moment, I take it that  
19 it's your view that some of those non-permafrost  
20 techniques can be utilized in permafrost territory?

21 A Yes.

22 Q But I take it that it's  
23 also from your view, reading your evidence, that modi-  
24 fied or new procedures may have to be identified or  
25 have been identified to deal with other kinds of  
26 permafrost problems?

27 A Yes.

28 Q And would it be correct  
29 to say as a general principle, that the actual con-  
30 struction procedures for many of the latter case





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 of that stabilization methods, remains to be  
3 worked out and there has yet been little experience  
4 in applying them to the kinds of situations that  
5 may exist on this line?

6 A There is experience with  
7 -- if not all of them, a wide variety of them -- that  
8 we can draw from the practice in Alaska, where slopes  
9 have been stabilized. Also, part of our activity  
10 is to interpret what nature does. Nature has stabilized  
11 a large number of slopes, and in fact, if you translate  
12 some of the principles behind the configurations that  
13 we adopt, you'll see that we're learning from nature  
14 as well, so that we draw on these experiences. Also  
15 there are experiences along the Dempster Highway.

16 Q I wasn't really referring  
17 to the validity, which I accept at this point, in  
18 the questioning of the quantitative or qualitative  
19 analysis of instability; but I was suggesting and  
20 perhaps apart from, we can accept Alaska and the Demp-  
21 ster Highway, that the actual construction techniques  
22 have been relatively little tested insofar as modifi-  
23 cation of techniques for permafrost terrain are  
24 concerned.

25 A The configurations that  
26 I have in mind employ well known construction tech-  
27 niques. If the question asks, have we established  
28 test sites in the sense that Sans Sault is a test site,  
29 for pipelining, have we established test sites to  
30 demonstrate specifically within the context of this





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 project that various stabilization schemes work, no,,  
3 that hasn't been done.

4 Q I can see that many of  
5 the techniques have been used across the world in  
6 non-permafrost terrain.

7 A Yes.

8 Q And you have said that  
9 some of those will be applicable as is to permafrost  
10 situations?

11 A Yes.

12 Q And obviously in those  
13 cases there may be some experience. You've also  
14 indicated, I think, that modifications and in some  
15 cases new techniques are required to deal with perma-  
16 frost situations and you've told us that you and your  
17 associates and those working in the field have devised  
18 those techniques?

19 A Yes. Perhaps the problem  
20 is your use of construction techniques as opposed to  
21 design concepts. Some of the design concepts are  
22 new, but they employ fairly conventional construction  
23 techniques.

24 Q But I put it to you  
25 that apart from Alaska -- let me put it this way, that  
26 on the drawing board the design technique may be  
27 new or modified. The construction technique selected  
28 may be traditional.

29 A Yes.

30 Q But I put it to you that



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

the combination of the two actually being done is  
apart from Alaska and the Dempster Highway, at the  
present stage, a matter that is little known.

A Less known than non-  
permafrost configurations.



clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q I wonder, we have the slide  
2 here which represents one of the techniques that you  
3 suggested, the sandwich technique.

4 A M'hmm.

5 Q Could you ask Mr. Williams  
6 -- Dr. Morgenstern, is this -- I take it that the  
7 technique shown on that slide is a traditional tech-  
8 nique in terms of design?

9 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

10 A No, well the illustration  
11 here illustrates several aspects of a sandwich that  
12 in various components can be used to stabilize this  
13 type of thawing slope. It might consist of just  
14 insulation, it might consist of drainage and insulat-  
15 ion, or a combination of drainage insulation and sur-  
16 charging.

17 The analysis to support the  
18 application of this is novel, in that it draws on  
19 the work/<sup>of</sup>the last few years that you alluded to  
20 earlier.

21 Q Yes. Are you familiar  
22 with any case where that technique has been used in  
23 permafrost terrain?

24 A Nature has certainly pro-  
25 duced insulations that have stabilized flat slopes.

26 Q Nature is a better workman  
27 than all of us.

28 A Yes it is.

29 Q In some cases. What I'm  
30 concerned about is leaving nature aside for the moment,





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Coopr,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 because nature created the problem we have to deal  
2 with, has that technique -- are you familiar with any  
3 case in which that technique has been utilized in  
4 permafrost areas?

5 A The rationale and under-  
6 standing of this technique is novel. It has not been  
7 implemented explicitly in practice, or if it has, it  
8 hasn't been understood the way that we understand  
9 it.

10 Q Well now, just because we  
11 have it there, you called it in your evidence a  
12 sandwich, it's really sort of a Dagwood sandwich,  
13 isn't it? It's more than a -- it has a variety of  
14 layers, doesn't it?

15 A It has a variety of layers,  
16 yes.

17 Q Would you describe them  
18 for us?

19 A Yes. The components of  
20 the layers would be a drainage layer, or an insulation  
21 layer, or a surcharge layer which is the gravel. The  
22 peat might or might not be present, depending upon  
23 whether it slid off or if that's part of the natural  
24 configuration.

25 Q Could I ask one or two  
26 questions just so I'll understand the diagram?  
27 Over what length of terrain might that be an appropriate  
28 solution?

29 A This would be a solution  
30 that we think would be used to stabilize thaw



1 induced over any length, where this type of mechanism  
2 would exist, where planar slides are developing likely  
3 along the right-of-way and in glacial lake basin  
4 soils.

5 Q So it might be used in  
6 areas that in length were anything from 100 yards to  
7 5 or 600 or more?

8 A Well, I doubt whether it  
9 would be as long as that, but in the order of several  
10 hundred yards.

11 Q Yes. Well now, beginning  
12 at the bottom, what is the first band, or is that  
13 the --

14 A This is the naturally  
15 which  
16 thawed soil/ from the ground surface down is evaluated  
as unstable.

17 Q I see.

18 A Then the artificial device,  
19 so to speak, or the preventative measure, the  
20 stabilization facility is this sandwich of drainage  
21 insulation and loading.

22 Q I don't understand yet.  
23 The white band is the thawed area, is it?

24 A Yes, the top of the ground  
25 is here, this is the top of the peat.

26 Q And you're indicating above  
27 the peat?

28 A And above the peat would be  
29 placed on top, yes.

30 Q Yes. Now, what is the



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 first layer above the peat?

2 A This would be a drainage  
3 layer to allow the water that is coming out due to  
4 thaw, to be carried away.

5 Q Yes. Now, what is the depth  
6 of the drainage layer?

7 A Oh, the order of a foot or  
8 so.

9 Q Yes, and that would be  
10 gravel?

11 A Sand, gravel, depending  
12 on design.

13 Q Yes, now what is the dotted  
14 line? Is that the condition of the two?

15 A No, it is a layer of  
16 insulation that would be calculated and placed within  
17 the sandwich, if the design indicates that retardation  
18 of the rate of thaw is helpful.

19 Q I see. What would the  
20 insulating material be?

21 A It would depend upon where  
22 you are. It might be prudent to use wood chips if  
23 there's a lot of wood around that you want to dispose  
24 of, but likely it would be a few inches of styrofoam.

25 Q Yes, I see. Now, what is  
26 the next layer above the insulation?

27 A It is a granular cap whose  
28 role is to put load on the sliding surface, or potent-  
29 ial sliding surface down here, and it would also be  
30 granular material.



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q When you say granular  
2 material, is that gravel?

3 A Sand or gravel.

4 Q Yes. And what depth would  
5 it be?

6 A It would be, the depths  
7 would be calculated as a function of the slope and  
8 design requirements, in the order of a few feet.

9 Q Yes, I take it that the  
10 depth of each of those layers has to reflect and res-  
11 pond to the problem that the slope presents under  
12 analysis?

13 A Yes. The rather interesting  
14 feature that if you try to stabilize with just the sur-  
15 charge, you need quite large amounts. If you try to  
16 stabilize with just insulation, you need quite large  
17 amounts.

18 The analysis shows how the use  
19 of the two optimizes and you get a very efficient  
20 compact sandwich to stabilize.

21 Q Now, in terms of that  
22 technique which you've explained for me, what is the  
23 degree of slope or the range of slopes to which it  
24 would be appropriate, or is it a general purpose  
25 remedy?

26 A Oh, it would be -- it's  
27 a general purpose wherever planar slides, planar slides  
28 associated with thawing are identified, so we're  
29 thinking here more gentle slopes perhaps in the finer  
30 grained materials.





clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q What sort of degree are  
2 you thinking of?

3 A Six, eight degree type of slope.  
4 I don't think our three degree slopes are going to prove  
5 to be unstable.

6 Q I see. Now, what about  
7 slopes of more substantial gradient than that?

8 A These are mainly in  
9 approaches into valleys and I think that the technique  
10 might have some application there, but buttressing  
11 might be more appropriate there.

12 For example, the Great Bear is  
13 a case in point, you think of buttress as the right  
14 approach.

15 Q Yes. Well, if the buttress  
16 were not elected as the remedy of choice, to what  
17 grade can you apply this mechanism?

18 A About, considering the  
19 worst soils that exist in the Mackenzie Valley, if  
20 you are thinking of the finer grained soils, around  
21 10 or 12 degrees.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: Dr. Morgen-  
23 stern, on the diagram that you just showed us, the  
24 word vegetation appeared, and until you explained the  
25 diagram, I thought that was the topmost layer. Did  
26 you say that there was to be a layer of vegetation on  
27 top of the --

28 A I did not, but these will  
29 be revegetated. We're advised by the biologists that  
30 the depth that we think might be used are suitable



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenster, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam.by Scott

1 to establish revegetation. Of course, in the long run,  
2 that will contribute but for a short term problem  
3 that has not been considered.

4 MR. SCOTT:

5 Q I take it, Dr. Morgenstern,  
6 that revegetation would (a) perhaps be inevitable, and  
7 (b) desirable in terms of stability?

8 A Yes.

9 Q And I take it that not  
10 shown in the diagram except perhaps as a line, you  
11 would want to add another layer which would be a  
12 more suitable revegetation medium than sand and  
13 gravel?

14 A Well, it would be part of  
15 the upper zoning. It would be designed or composed  
16 in such a way that vegetation can be established.

17 Q So it would not only be  
18 sand and gravel? What would the top layer be then?

19 A Whatever our vegetation  
20 people need to establish vegetation.

21 Q Yes.

22 A I can't give you a compos-  
23 ition here.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Could I ask  
25 a question, Mr. Scott?

26 Q The usefulness of revegetat-  
27 ion, assuming it were merely seeding of grass, the  
28 usefulness of that from the point of view of slope  
29 stability would be very, very limited, wouldn't it?

30 A Yes, this is only a



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 reconstructing or attempting to reconstruct the  
2 environment, yes. We are not relying on that vegetation.

3 Q No, no and since in many  
4 parts of the right-of-way, you will be clearing the  
5 ground of tree cover, there is no slightest possibility  
6 of achieving restoration except over a period of  
7 many, many, many years?

8 A Yes, that's right.

9 MR. SCOTT:

10 Q Mr. Williams, would you  
11 agree with me that most experienced contractors are  
12 not very happy with the prospect of having to place  
13 thinly layered blankets on slopes?

14 WITNESS WILLIAMS:

15 A If they were paid for it,  
16 I think they would be glad to do it, Mr. Scott.

17 Q Well that puts you and I  
18 in the same camp on a lot of these issues, but I  
19 take it that --

20 THE COMMISSIONER: You are  
21 both men of the world, obviously.

22 MR. SCOTT: I was going to say,  
23 Mr. Commissioner, that we were both mercenary.

24 Q Mr. Williams, I understand  
25 that contractors, like lawyers, will do what they are  
26 told, but wouldn't you agree with me that for an ex-  
27 perience contractor, it's not a happy prospect because  
28 of the difficulties involved?

29 Well don't ask an inexperienced  
30 contractor.





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1                                   A     I don't know, Mr. Scott.  
2     If you're getting into the type of the contract that  
3     might be used on this project, I don't think you want  
4     to get into that at this time, but the contractor --  
5     any contractor would be glad to do what he's paid  
6     for.

7                                   Now, if he has a contract and  
8     this isn't included, and you tell him that this has  
9     to be done within his price, certainly he would be  
10    unhappy to do that, but --

11                                  Q     I'm not referring to the  
12    contractual obligation at all. I'm suggesting to you  
13    that sitting around in a construction engineer's  
14    club or wherever experienced construction men meet,  
15    they would commiserate, one with the other, with the  
16    problems involved in placing thinly layered blankets  
17    of differing materials in appropriate proportions  
18    on slopes?

19                                  A     A part time contractor  
20    might take this attitude. A landscaping contractor  
21    may think it's fine.

22                                  Q     Well for a landscape  
23    gardener, I think there might be no problem, but  
24    you're not in that business, are you?

25                                  A     No sir, I'm not.

26                                  Q     The diagram suggests you  
27    may get into it.

28                                  MR. GENEST: Do you commiserate  
29    with other lawyers when you get a hard case?  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 MR. SCOTT: I sympathize with  
2 your difficulties, Mr. Genest.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: You walked  
4 into that one.

5 MR. SCOTT:

6 Q I want to read you a  
7 paragraph from the Northern Engineering Services  
8 report on slope stability in permafrost terrain, the  
9 white volume of December, '74. It's in the construct-  
10 ion notes --

11 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

12 A Page number, please?  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 MR. SCOTT: We noted the page numbers,  
3 and it happens to be one of your bigger reports. I can  
4 fill in the time by criticizing the index, Mr. Genest,  
5 but I won't.

6 MR. GENEST: I am grateful  
7 for small mercies.

8 MR. SCOTT: It is at page 74,  
9 and it's paragraph 4, it's called:

10 "Construction notes on stabilization."  
11 I might just read the paragraph:

12 "It is anticipated that there will be slopes  
13 that are considered marginally stable in the  
14 skin flow failure mode, and will require the  
15 application of preventive stabilization schemes  
16 in order to ensure stability,"  
17 and stopping there, Dr. Morgenstern, that's one of  
18 the things we've been talking about?

19 A Yes, exactly.

20 Q

21 "However, at this time it is inappropriate  
22 to become specific as to the exact configura-  
23 tions that these remedial measures would  
24 entail and how many slopes would require  
25 treatment of one form or another."  
26 Now there's no doubt about that, is there?

27 A No.

28 Q

29 "This is primarily because there is a lack  
30 of design input parameters on which to base



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 typical designs. While designs could be  
3 formulated at this time, on the basis of  
4 conservatively assessed parameters and  
5 judgment, it is not considered appropriate  
6 to do so. The finalization of economically  
7 expedient and environmentally suitable  
8 stabilization schemes will require close  
9 liaison and discussion with geotechnical,  
10 geothermal, environmental, and construction  
11 support groups."

12 Would it be fair to say that that summarizes the  
13 problem to which I've been attempting to allude?

14 A I really don't see that  
15 as a problem, Mr. Scott. It's a reality. This is the  
16 state of development of this project. What this is  
17 alluding to is that environmental and expedient  
18 construction procedures and so on will be integrated  
19 on a mile-by-mile design.

20 Q Let me ask you this.  
21 What design input parameters are presently required  
22 so that typical designs can be made?

23 A If we were to have to  
24 design at this instant in time for final construction,  
25 we would be designing on the worst soils we know, so  
26 that the further input parameters have to do with  
27 more site specific sampling and testing from actual  
28 slopes that have been identified in order to not  
29 needlessly waste these procedures.

30 Q Well now, let us suppose





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that in spite of your best attempts to avoid unstable  
3 slopes by route selection, and your best attempts to  
4 prevent stabilization as a result of your designs, a  
5 slope failure of one type or another does in fact  
6 occur?

7 A Yes.

8 Q I take it that then  
9 you're in a remedial situation?

10 A Yes.

11 Q Not only to remedy what-  
12 ever damage may have in the course been done, but also  
13 in certain cases to prevent recurrence?

14 A Certainly.

15 Q Now I gather that in that  
16 situation there will be some kinds of schemes that  
17 will be applicable to / <sup>failed</sup> slopes or slopes that are  
18 in the course of failing, and will be used for the  
19 prevention of instability?

20 A Yes.

21 Q And the actual procedures  
22 that will be required to do the remedial slope, the  
23 remedial work after the failure or during the course  
24 of failure, although known in concept, are not yet  
25 worked out?

26 A They would rely on  
27 similar procedures that are used at the outset. The  
28 slope may have been not identified as unstable, so  
29 that these schemes would be applied. There are other  
30 alternatives, one might come in to freeze some material



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 and put on surcharges and gravel berms and things like  
3 that. There are a variety of remedial schemes that  
4 are in our armory.

5 Q When you say "in our  
6 armory", I take it you mean in your armory of con-  
7 ceptual designs?

8 A Yes.

9 Q Yes.

10 A And experience, of  
11 people that have stabilized slopes. After all, these  
12 would all be thawed materials, we would be almost  
13 back to conventional work to some degree.

14 Q I take it that the  
15 novelty of that situation is not that the materials  
16 are thawed, which is common elsewhere in the world,  
17 but that they are thawed materials that are moving or  
18 have moved on a frozen slope?

19 A Yes, we would have  
20 two problems, to stabilize the thawed material and  
21 to stop further degradation of the frozen material.

22 Q Yes, and whatever the  
23 techniques may be in this kind of remedy situation,  
24 no matter how widely they have been used in other  
25 parts of the world and on the Alaska route and the  
26 Dempster Highway, I take it that relatively little is  
27 known about their in-site application in permafrost  
28 terrain?

29 A Certainly the experience  
30 of stabilizing slopes in permafrost terrain is less



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 than in non-permafrost terrain.

3 Q Is what?

4 A Is less than in non-  
5 permafrost terrain.

6 Q Well now, I take it it  
7 is reasonably obvious even to me from what you have  
8 said in your remarks at the beginning of the panel,  
9 that the prediction of hazard in slopes and the  
10 design of stabilization techniques is going to require  
11 a great deal of specific geotechnical information about  
12 local conditions on slopes on the route?

13 A Or at least groups of  
14 slopes in certain physiographic or terrain types.

15 Q Yes. Well, I'd like  
16 to ask Doctor, I take it it is your view that the  
17 slopes will be analyzed in groups or categories?

18 A Some will be analyzed  
19 singularly; some will be analyzed in groups.  
20 I don't think I would expect to have to drill all of  
21 the 700 slopes that so far have been isolated in the  
22 listing again.

23 Q Well let me ask you  
24 this: Which slopes will be individually examined?

25 A Those --

26 Q For geotechnical data?

27 A Certainly the steeper,  
28 and the steeper and the higher slopes, the ones in  
29 the more difficult terrain types, the ones that on  
30 preliminary calculation have marginal factors of





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 safety, and which we want to go and evaluate just  
3 what materials are, what the analysis is in more  
4 detail. These are the slopes that might intrude into  
5 an environmentally sensitive area, the slopes that  
6 might generate, if they moved would generate erosion  
7 problems. These spectrums of considerations will all  
8 be employed to pick out the slopes that are worthy of  
9 site specific drilling.

10 Q So am I clear that what  
11 you will do is you will pick out slopes that require  
12 individual treatment, and then on a group basis or  
13 group bases analyze various categories of other  
14 slopes?

15 A Yes, and that grouping  
16 will be our function of our knowledge of the terrain  
17 conditions. At some locations we will feel that we  
18 have pretty good knowledge, and others we feel that  
19 our knowledge is poor and we'll have to go and get  
20 more data.

21 Q Yes, and the technique  
22 is not only observation but drill?

23 A Yes.

24 Q Now, Dr. Clark, I raised  
25 this approach to the question with Dr. Morgenstern,  
26 who told us, as I understand his evidence, that  
27 some slopes will be examined on an individual basis  
28 and others will be examined in groups. Before I  
29 come to that, perhaps I should ask Dr. Morgenstern,  
30 how would you characterize the slopes that you



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
~~Cross~~-Exam by Scott

propose to individually assess? Is it ones that appear to be marginally stable, or marginally instable?

A Marginally -- certainly all unstable slopes. Well, not necessarily. The marginally stable ones, the high steep ones, the ones where sliding of fine-grained material into rivers might change water qualities, and also it will depend upon our knowledge of the ground conditions. Some terrain units we have a fair amount of knowledge and in other terrain units, less knowledge. So that the evaluation of the allowable stress level of a slope is a function of the degree of knowledge, so all of these are really just repeating.

Q So would I be correct in suggesting that you would want, in order to achieve environmental and pipe security, to investigate all slopes that are identified as marginally stable?

A No, I think that we could recommend some stabilization measures on a conservative basis for many of them, and not proceed with further investigation. The further investigation would be to produce more efficient stabilization schemes, or eliminate it.

Q Well, Dr. Clark, in response to request No. 19, which is at page 19 of the book, 19-4, you say -- have you got it?

WITNESS CLARK: I'm just getting it, Mr. Scott.

THE COMMISSIONER: What was



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 that again, 19?

3 MR. SCOTT: 19-4, Mr.

4 Commissioner, about half-way through the first  
5 paragraph you say:

6 "All slopes identified as being marginally  
7 stable will then be investigated by instrument  
8 surveying and drilling. The location number  
9 and depth of the drill holes, the frequency  
10 and type of samples recovered and the extent  
11 of laboratory testing to classify the soil  
12 and measure soil parameters will vary and  
13 will depend on the particular conditions at  
14 each slope."

15 Now what I'm really anxious to know is, is the  
16 applicant adopting the view of Dr. Morgenstern, as  
17 I understood it to be, or may we assume that in  
18 fact a more conservative approach will be utilized  
19 so that all slopes that are marginally stable will  
20 be individually examined?

21 WITNESS CLARK: All slopes  
22 that are considered marginally stable in this  
23 sense would indicate that certain investigation has  
24 preceded that classification. A final classification  
25 of those that are going to be required for a more  
26 intensive investigation; for example at this time  
27 we have field programs going that are looking at  
28 slopes that have failed and slopes that one might  
29 have thought they should have failed under the  
30 physical conditions, and these will give us a further





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 characterization of slopes in general. We would then  
3 have a reconnaissance and a number of features could  
4 go into that, that will determine those that  
5 require final design detail.'





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 Q What I want to know is the  
2 position of the applicant for the purposes of this  
3 inquiry. Is it a correct statement at this stage to  
4 say that it is your intention that all slopes identi-  
5 fied as being marginally stable, will be investigated  
6 by instrument surveying and drilling?

7 A When we have reached that  
8 point in time where we are ready to initiate the  
9 field drilling program, or field seismic survey or  
10 instrumentation, we will have a classification of all  
11 slopes that are marginally unstable, but they would  
12 not include all the slopes, 700 slopes or so that we've  
13 listed.

14 Q I understand that, but do  
15 I have your assurance that the applicant's position  
16 is that all slopes that are marginally stable or  
17 judged by it to be marginally stable, will be ex-  
18 amined by drilling?

19 A I am not sure that we are  
20 not talking along two different lines. All slopes  
21 will be examined, there may be a group of slopes with  
22 very similar characteristics where representative or  
23 worst casing may be drilled and applied to the  
24 others.

25 Q Well then, I take it that  
26 the statement that is contained there is not your  
27 present intention?

28 A No.

29 MR. GENEST: Well no, that to  
30 me, is not a proper statement of --



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 MR. SCOTT: How does Mr. Genest  
2 read that sentence?

3 MR. GENEST: I think it was  
4 not a question of the time of identification of an  
5 unstable slope.

6 MR. SCOTT: Well, we have Dr.  
7 Morgenstern's view and that doesn't cause me any  
8 difficulty whatever, as to how he would propose to do  
9 it. I think it's been clear and it is evident the  
10 way that he would approach the problem.

11 I'm concerned about the response  
12 to the questions. Now, is that an accurate statement?  
13 If it's not, I'm not saying that one is preferable to  
14 the other, I don't know, but I want to know what the  
15 intention of the applicant is?

16 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

17 A Could I try and reconcile,  
18 perhaps two different sources of information. We have  
19 a table of potentially unstable slopes that have been  
20 selected on a very conservative point of view. Of  
21 that, for example, there are 340 some odd slopes very  
22 gentle inclination, 3 to 6 degrees, zero to forty  
23 feet in height.

24 Our present view is each of  
25 these slopes worthy of individual consideration from  
26 a design, analysis, a judgment point of view, but I  
27 would not anticipate drilling 344 gentle little slopes,

28 On the other hand, when we have  
29 gone through the design, and we then are left  
30 even after implementing a remedial measure or a pre-  
liminary remedial measure and are still left with a



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 degree of stress mobilization that we think is mar-  
2 ginal, marginal for security, we would then go out  
3 and get much more information for each of those cases.

4 Q Without carrying on unduly,  
5 you have listed in Table 1.2-1, 686 slopes that are  
6 regarded as potentially unstable slopes along the  
7 right-of-way.

8 I read the response to the  
9 Assessment Group as assurance that all slopes identi-  
10 fied as being marginally stable will then be investi-  
11 gated by instrument surveying and drilling.

MR. GENEST:

12 A Mr. Scott, I think --

MR. SCOTT:

13 Q You think that is not  
14 correct?

15 A No, the distinction that  
16 I tried to draw to your attention here is that this  
17 heading is potentially unstable slopes. These will  
18 now be refined, and we will end up from this 686  
19 with still, after our preliminary design work, some  
20 marginally unstable slopes.

21 I said marginally stable slopes,  
22 we'll not have any unstable slopes.

23 Q Right. And I take it at  
24 the moment, are you in a position to say -- I take it  
25 you're not in a position to say how many they will  
26 number, at this time?

27 A No, but I anticipate they  
28 will be numerous. There will certainly be quite a  
29 few slopes that will be drilled.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: I wonder,





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy- Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 I'm not quite sure where -- could you summarize what  
2 you understand to be the effect of what has just been  
3 said, Mr. Scott, for my benefit?

4 MR. SCOTT: Well, Mr. Commission-  
5 er, I think the dialogue began by Dr. Morgenstern  
6 explaining the approach to the problem, that is, as I  
7 understood him to say, that there would be some slopes  
8 that would require individual attention, and some  
9 that could be attended to, if I can put it that way,  
10 in classifications or groups, for each of which there  
11 would be a conservative assessment and a typical  
12 model, if I can put it that way, a classification  
13 system.

14 But that not all therefore,  
15 would be individually examined. I then put to Dr.  
16 Clark, the observation that the Assessment Group's  
17 answer indicated that all slopes that were marginally  
18 stable would be examined --

19 MR. GENEST: All slopes  
20 identified.

21 MR. SCOTT: Identified.

22 MR. GENEST: And the process  
23 is that they're identified after the process you've  
24 just described has been gone through.

25 MR. SCOTT: I'm sorry to hear  
26 that we have to read the responses with this parti-  
27 cularity. I may not understand it, but I obviously,  
28 according to the rationalization now developed, have  
29 misread that sentence, and I take it that the process  
30 is that the 686 potentially unstable slopes are not



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 the same as slopes that are marginally stable, and  
2 that of those 686 potentially unstable, there is to  
3 be a break-out of some that are marginally stable.

4 Q And do I understand that  
5 those will be individually attended to?

6 A Yes, the -- if I can do  
7 again -- of the 686 slopes, the further analysis will  
8 identify some that are clearly very stable, and it  
9 will identify some that are clearly unstable, and  
10 they will be made stable, and we will identify some  
11 that are marginally stable, and they will either be  
12 made stable, much more stable, to take it out of that  
13 marginal classification, or they will justify  
14 individual attention in order to -- in order to  
15 fine tune the design.

16 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, that  
17 leaves me with only one figure that remains unaccounted  
18 for, 340 slopes. I must have lost the significance  
19 of that.

20 MR. SCOTT: 344, Mr. Commissioner--  
21 is I think the precise figure which Dr. Morgenstern  
22 was referring to and is the total number of slopes  
23 which have a 3 to 6 degree angle. Have I read the  
24 chart correctly?

25 A And a zero to forty foot  
26 height.

27 Q Yes, and I think -- and  
28 a zero to forty foot height, and I think Dr. Morgen-  
29 stern's point was that insofar as they are relatively  
30 minor, they might not -- they would probably not be



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 among the ones generally that would require individual  
2 treatment?

3 A We expect the vast number  
4 of these to end up being judged stable.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, going  
6 back to the chart that you had on the board here two  
7 or three weeks ago, do -- you said then that all of  
8 the slopes of a certain height and more than three  
9 degrees, would -- all of those together came to your  
10 686?

11 A Yes.

12 Q So you're taking the lowest  
13 category, so to speak --

14 A Yes.

15 Q -- of potentially unstable  
16 slopes, and those are the 344 slopes that you expect  
17 that many of those will not have to be examined indi-  
18 vidually?

19 A They will have to be  
20 examined individually in the office, but I don't  
21 expect they'll have to be drilled.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, all  
23 right, I'm with you.

24 MR. SCOTT: Well, Mr.  
25 Commissioner, I plead guilty to not apprehending the  
26 rationalization. I was unable to distinguish between  
27 potentially unstable slopes and slopes that are  
28 marginally stable. I now have that evidence.

29 THE COMMISSIONER: Well --

30 MR. SCOTT: They're obviously





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 not the same and they may, in the view of the --

THE COMMISSIONER:

2 Marginally stable slopes  
3 are stabler than potentially unstable slopes, or maybe  
4 they are not.

5 MR. SCOTT: One would have  
6 thought so, but they are included among potentially  
7 unstable slopes.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: I think I  
9 understand this anyway.

10 MR. SCOTT:

11 Q We had better begin to read  
12 in detail the replies to the Assessment Group.

13 The response, Dr. Morgenstern,  
14 to the Assessment Group question, and I hope it's one  
15 that I can understand this time on monitoring, deals  
16 with -- and I take it stopping right there, monitoring  
17 generally speaking, is the process that will occur  
18 after construction ?

19 A Yes.

20 Q Yes. It's question 55.  
21 And it deals, without reading it, "with various  
22 techniques for providing for early detection of  
23 signs of instability or potential instability of  
24 slopes" on page 1 and 2, and the first sentence of  
25 the statement, in paragraph (a) on page 55.1 is  
26 this:

27 "Long term instrument  
28 monitoring will be considered for all slopes  
29 which could affect or be affected by the  
30 pipeline or that have some condition that





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1           could change during the life of the pipe-  
2           line to reduce the margin of safety  
3           against failure".

4           The margin of safety begins to sound very like Dr.  
5           Casagrande , but I'll leave that for the moment.

6                       THE COMMISSIONER:

                      Which one is that again,

7           I'm sorry?

8                               MR. SCOTT:   It's page 55-1,  
9           under sub-paragraph (a) .

10                           MR. GENEST:   The bottom of the  
11           page, sir.

12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 Q And I read the first  
3 sentence. Dr. Morgenstern, can you tell us how you  
4 will decide which slopes to monitor?

5 A The slopes that have  
6 the largest potential for movement would normally be  
7 in the <sup>less</sup>/stable soils, the steeper slopes, the higher  
8 slopes, perhaps a slope where there is a potential  
9 for dramatic river change which could induce toe  
10 erosion.

11 Q I would agree that those  
12 are definitely the slopes you would want to monitor.  
13 What I'm really asking is how will you decide which  
14 those are and designate them? Has that been done or  
15 will it be done?

16 A That will be a mile  
17 by mile function to evaluate .

18 Q By what process is the  
19 determination made?

20 A It would be -- particular  
21 slopes would be flagged during the analysis process  
22 when we're sorting out these potentially unstable  
23 slopes. We will look at the configuration, we will  
24 see whether we have -- whether it's a rather unique  
25 type of slope or whether it's a very common type of  
26 slope, whether we have more experience with it or less  
27 experience, whether the implications of movement are  
28 more severe or less severe and so on.

29 Q And would you agree with  
30 me that your monitoring list will rely very heavily



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 on the actual construction experience as the pipeline  
3 moves through the valley?

4 A We will certainly get  
5 a great deal of information from that, no doubt, but  
6 the final details of the instrumentation will be  
7 greatly assisted by the construction experience.

8 Q Yes, so that one would  
9 hope to have the complete and best list of slopes to  
10 be monitored, not before but rather after construction.

11 A Yes, certainly.

12 Q Now what in view of  
13 that answer, it will be difficult, but what is your  
14 present estimate of the number of slopes that you  
15 may want to monitor? Let us say out of the 686.

16 A I would suggest it's  
17 measured in tens as opposed to hundreds.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, some-  
19 where between 1 and 10, or between 1 and 100?

20 A Tens, it would be greater  
21 than ten and less than 100. I can't do better than  
22 that.

23 Q You told us the various  
24 aspects of the passage of man, by which I include  
25 construction, can increase the instability of slopes  
26 from time to time.

27 A Yes.

28 Q And I take it that  
29 in this context the kinds of things that have the  
30 potential for increasing instability are such things





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 vegetation removal and disturbance of the organic  
3 mat, backfilling of the pipeline ditch on slopes --

4 A Well, that's a feature  
5 that's been designed and has to be considered. It's  
6 a design consideration.

7 Q Yes, but it is something  
8 that has to be watched because potentially it may in  
9 certain circumstances increase instability.

10 A It may become unstable,  
11 the backfill, certainly.

12 Q And cuts on slopes can  
13 also increase instability.

14 A Yes.

15 Q Are there any other fac-  
16 tors, any other factors of construction that occur  
17 to you at the moment that can increase instability?

18 A Disruption of drainage.

19 Q Yes.

20 A These are the main ones.

21 Q I'm sorry?

22 A These are the main ones.

23 Poor placement of spoil, building large piles where  
24 they shouldn't be built.

25 Q Can the improper or  
26 imprudent use of equipment increase instability?

27 A Yes, if for example an  
28 operator drops his bulldozer blade when he shouldn't  
29 drop his bulldozer blade and strip the organic cover,  
30 there is no question that that will aggravate thaw



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 and increase instability.

3 Q And I take it that in  
4 terms of construction techniques, it may be a  
5 significant factor in dealing with slope instability  
6 to select one mode rather than another of construction.

7 A I can't --

8 Q Well, for example, it  
9 might as I think Mr. Williams suggested when we were  
10 looking at photographs yesterday, it might be desirable  
11 in certain locations to clear trees on a by hand basis  
12 rather than sending in some gigantic bulldozer on a  
13 slope.

14 A Generally speaking,  
15 the construction practice being adopted in this project  
16 is very impressive in its contribution to minimizing  
17 slope stability problems, thermal degradation problems,  
18 for example in contrast to what is my experience in  
19 the Alaskan Pipeline project.

20 Q but I take it that that  
21 Yes, /experience indicates  
22 that the selection of techniques of construction is  
23 frequently a dominant consideration.

24 A This project has selected  
25 techniques from that consideration. Be more specific.

26 Q I'm sorry a construction  
27 engineer has various techniques by which various  
28 tasks can be performed.

29 A Yes.

30 Q I'm putting it to you  
that in certain cases, looking at slope instability



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 it can be critical which of the various techniques  
3 to do the given job he selects.

4 A It can contribute, and  
5 I think that this was part of the thrust in this  
6 report, to illustrate the need for geotechnical and  
7 environmental construction people to collaborate  
8 in the fine tuning of their procedures.

9 The reliance on snow and  
10 ice roads is a major contribution in this regard.

11 Q Well now, in the  
12 responses, question 24, page 2, which is the section  
13 on buried versus elevated pipeline --

14 MR. GENEST: 24?

15 MR. SCOTT: 24-2, referring  
16 to the first full paragraph on that page, 'the last  
17 sentence:

18 "Applicant does not expect that slope conditions  
19 which would preclude the burial mode will be  
20 encountered, since potential problems can be  
21 solved either by re-routing or slope stabliliza-  
22 tion."

23 Can you visualize any situation where you would  
24 recommend pile construction on a slope because of  
25 slope failure hazard to either the pipeline or to  
26 the environment ?

27 A No. The support, the  
28 frozen ground around the pipe contributes quite a  
29 lot to its own integrity, and I can't at this  
30 time think of any pile mode that would be intrinsically





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

safer from that point of view.

Q Well now, in what way, if any, will the chilling of the pipeline affect the stability of slopes, and that's really what I think you've just referred to?

A Thawed ground is less stable than frozen ground, and so that the encasement of the pipe itself in frozen ground makes that component stable on the slope, while the right-of-way itself might be unstable when it's thawing.

Q Can you envisage situations in which the chilling would lead to increased instability as a result of drainage problems?

A Yes.

Q How would you propose to combat those?

A By drainage or by putting gravel filters on the uphill side. These are measures we have under consideration.

Q Well, you say "by drainage". Are you --

A Artificial drainage, putting in conduits, little pipes on the uphill side or by putting gravel filters on the uphill side to allow the water to --

Q Are you referring to the kind of drainage techniques that Dr. Clark referred to, berm breaks?

A No, no. The configura-





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

1  
2 tion that I have in mind is the frost bulb impeding  
3 flow through unfrozen ground on sloping ground. This  
4 builds up water pressure in the sloping ground uphill  
5 of the frost bulb, and aggravates stability, tends  
6 to make that material want to slide and sheer more  
7 than it might otherwise do. This is uphill of the  
8 pipe. In order then to return that material to its  
9 previous degree of stability, one has to reduce the  
10 water pressures by drainage, by putting in horizontal  
11 pipes or digging little trenches up the hill, or by  
12 putting a gravel cap which would allow the water to  
13 come out without bringing the organics down.

14 Q And I take it that this  
15 maybe in addition to the berm break--

16 A Yes.

17 Q -- through the bulb  
18 solution that Dr. Clark spoke of.

19 A Yes, that's right.

20 Q And would these  
21 remedial measures be, if not permanent, long-term?

22 A Yes.

23 Q And what actual ground  
24 experience is there in dealing with these techniques  
25 in permafrost terrain?

26 A The soil that we're now  
27 stabilizing is unfrozen soils. The problem is only  
28 serious in the discontinuous zone where we are blocking  
29 off flow in thick components of unfrozen soil, so that  
30 the principles are just an extrapolation from our



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper  
Hardy, Williams  
Cross-Exam by Scott

southerly experience.

Q Yes, with the addition  
that these unfrozen soils again are founded on a  
permafrost base.

A Yes, I don't think that  
matters a great deal. We're stabilizing unfrozen  
soil, <sup>either</sup> a very thick active layer, or material that's  
completely thawed. There may or may not be permafrost  
around it.

Q Whether it is important  
or not, I take it that there is limited experience  
in utilizing these solutions in a permafrost situa-  
tion, that is in a permafrost terrain.

A The problem is only severe  
where the presence of permafrost is slight. 'It is actually  
most severe when it's absent, <sup>or</sup> possibly more severe when  
it's absent. So we are borderline as to whether we  
have a lot of experience in an Arctic environment or  
not. In my view, it's a natural extrapolation from  
southern techniques northward.



1 Q Well we have a lot of  
2 experience digging basements in the south, but that's  
3 going to cause us a little trouble in Inuvik, isn't  
4 it?

5 WITNESS HARDY:

6 A There is experience, Mr. Scott  
7 on the Westcoast Transmission.

8  
9 Q Is that the Pointed Mountain  
10 line again?

11 A Another one.

12 Q That's another one?

13 Dr. Morgenstern, can you visual-  
14 ize any situation, either engineering or environmental  
15 in nature, in which in your judgment it might be  
16 proven to relocate the pipe or a pipeline facility,  
17 such as the compressor station, after the commencement  
18 of clearing or construction in order to avoid a  
19 slope that has developed a failure, or that is threat-  
20 ening to fail?

21 WITNESS MORGENSTERN:

22 A I can't think of any con-  
23 figuration. We're devoting a great deal of energy  
24 to getting it right before construction. The only  
25 thing that comes to mind is if we make a mistake.

26 Q Well, perhaps I can give  
27 you an example. I'm advised that it was necessary  
28 to relocate the Mackenzie Highway on which perhaps  
29 a mistake or two has been made, at the Martin River  
30 near Fort Simpson, because after the clearing and





Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 construction had taken place, it was found that there  
2 was a tendency to permafrost induced flow landslides,  
3 and as a result, the work of clearing and some of the  
4 construction had commenced and it was decided, I pre-  
5 sume for mixed environmental or engineering reasons  
6 that the route should be moved. Can you envisage any  
7 situation in which that might happen with respect to  
8 this pipeline?

9 A The procedure that we have  
10 described, the documentation in support of the  
11 approach to slope stability, I think would have  
12 identified the Martin River problem for the Mackenzie  
13 Highway people, and it would have been addressed in  
14 a more positive manner.

15 That configuration is  
16 anticipated, and we feel that we have anticipated all  
17 the configurations, but we may be wrong. The Macken-  
18 zie Highway could perhaps have drawn on other advice  
19 than they did.

20 Q Well at least perhaps we  
21 have come that far since your examination in chief.  
22 You've anticipated all the configurations, but you  
23 might be wrong.

24 Mr. Commissioner, that frank-  
25 ly is all I am prepared to deal with now. I --

26 THE COMMISSIONER: That's hard  
27 to believe.

28 If you are suggesting we  
29 adjourn, I take it that you want this panel back  
30 again on Monday, Mr. Scott?



Clark, Hollingshead, McRoberts,  
Slusarchuk, Morgenstern, Cooper,  
Hardy, Williams  
Cr. Exam. by Scott

1 MR. SCOTT: Yes, and I think  
2 Mr. Genest wants them back. I won't be held entirely  
3 responsible.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: All right.

5 MR. GENEST:

6 They will be glad to be back,  
7 they like this place.

8 THE COMMISSIONER:

9 They are part of the scenery  
10 now.

11 Well, we  
12 will adjourn til 1 o'clock Monday?

13 MR. SCOTT: Yes, sir.

14 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO 1:00 P.M. ON  
15 MONDAY, APRIL 14TH, 1975)  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

347  
M835  
Vol. XXVIII

AUTHOR

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:

TITLE

Vol. XXVIII 11 April 1975

DATE DUE |

BORROWER'S NAME

347  
M835  
Vol. XXVIII

















3 1761 11469195 9